

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 805SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using 805SC to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it for later reference.
- Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

805SC is compatible with 3G network technology.

Note

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Not all functions and services described in this user guide are available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).
- If there are any missing/misplaced pages in this manual, SoftBank will replace it.

Content Search

Title Search



Contents
➤P.vi

Index
➤P.26-16

Objective Search



Objective Search
➤P.ii

Index
➤P.26-16

Feature Search



Feature Search
➤P.iv

Contents
➤P.vi

Using Handset



Display Indicators
➤P.1-9

Function List
➤P.26-2

Manual Organization



Contents
➤P.vi

Chapter Contents
➤Chapter Top

Solving Problems



Troubleshooting
➤P.26-4

Warranty & Service
➤P.26-23

Objective Search

My Contact Information

Confirming My Number

Quickly confirm your own number (USIM Card contains handset number).

Handset Phone Number Confirmation [P.1-17](#)

Customizing Mail Address

Change default handset mail address to add a personal touch and reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address [P.21-2](#)

Customizing 805SC

Downloading Music (Japanese)

Find and download music via Media Player.

Downloading Music [P.11-5](#)

Setting Ringtones

Set ringtones for voice or video calls.

Settings Sound File as Ringtone [P.12-12](#)

Mastering The Basics

Learning the Handset

Learn to navigate menus and use Keypad.

Menu Operations [P.xi](#)

Placing Calls

Place voice or video calls on 805SC.

Voice Call [P.2-2](#)
Video Call [P.6-1](#)

Fun Stuff

Watching Digital TV

Enjoy digital TV throughout Japan.

Digital TV [P.7-1](#)

Using Media Player

Play media files or download new ones.

Media Player [P.11-1](#)

Using My Details

Save your own contact information in order to share it with others easily.

My Phonebook Details P.5-18

Messaging Multiple Receptions

Send a message to multiple addresses.

Creating Messages P.18-6

Sending Files Wirelessly

Transfer files between Bluetooth® devices.

Bluetooth® P.13-5

Customizing Standby Display

Set Wallpaper/Calendar or change clock appearance.

Wallpaper P.9-2
Clock/Calendar P.9-4

Customizing Message List

Select message list window content.

Message List View P.21-7

Securing Handset Info

Lock Messages, Data Folder, Phonebook, Call Log or Calendar with Phone Password.

Privacy Lock P.14-6

Entering Text

Create messages or Phonebook entries.

Text Entry P.4-2

Using Messaging Services

Send messages via S! Mail or SMS.

Messaging P.18-1

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Browse the Mobile Net via Yahoo! Keitai.

Yahoo! Keitai P.22-3

Using Convenient Tools

Use the on board Calculator or Dictionary, etc. as tools to enhance your day life.

Calculator P.15-19
Dictionary P.15-22

Playing Games

Download S! Applications via Yahoo! Keitai to enjoy mobile games and more anywhere.

S! Appli P.25-1

Using External Memory

Insert Memory Card and connect 8055C to a PC to use handset as external memory.

Memory Card P.12-20
Mass Storage P.13-13

Feature Search

8055C Features

One Seg
Enjoy Digital TV & Data Broadcasts.
⇒P.7-1

Camera
Choose from Single shot, Multi-shot, Mosaic Shot or Panorama Shot, and add photo frames.
⇒P.8-1

SoftBank Mobile Features

Yahoo! Keitai
Browse the Mobile Internet for image/sound files as well as useful information.
⇒P.22-3

3D Pictogram
Animate message text/pictograms in 3D.
⇒P.21-6

Useful Features

Message Notice
View new message notices without interrupting operations in progress.
⇒P.21-7

Schedule/Alarm
Save events by time/date and set alarms.
⇒P.15-2, ⇒P.15-5

PC-related Features

PC Site Browser
Browse PC websites on 8055C.
⇒P.22-4

File Viewer
View PC-based documents on 8055C.
⇒P.12-6

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download e-books, etc. on 805SC.

⇒P.25-6

Hangul Entry (Korean)

Select combinations of consonants and vowels.

⇒P.4-10

Memory Card

Extend handset memory or back up files.

⇒P.12-20

S! Town (Japanese)

Enjoy SoftBank communication services.

⇒P.25-6

S! Appli

Download games, 3D images, etc. via Yahoo! Keitai, etc. to install on 805SC.

⇒P.25-2

Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange text messages wirelessly with up to 8 people via Bluetooth®.

⇒P.25-8

Media Player

Play 805SC/Memory Card media files.

⇒P.11-1

Voice Recorder

Use Memory Card for longer recording.

⇒P.15-14

Optional Services

Use Call Forwarding, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, etc. to handle incoming calls, etc.

⇒P.17-1

Mass Storage PC Required

Insert Memory Card and connect 805SC to a PC via USB cable to access files via PC.

⇒P.13-13

Bluetooth®

Connect devices or move files wirelessly.

⇒P.13-2

Samsung PC Studio PC Required

Install this software on a PC and connect 805SC via USB to import PC music files.

⇒P.ix

Contents.....	vi
Accessories.....	ix
About This Guide	x
Safety Precautions	xii
General Notes	xxiii
SAR Certification.....	xxx

1 Getting Started

USIM Card	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-6
About Battery	1-11
Power On/Off	1-17
Time & Date	1-18
8055C Menus	1-19
Menu	1-22
Security Codes	1-22

2 Basic Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2
Receiving a Call.....	2-3
Rejecting Incoming Call	2-5
Answer Machine	2-5
Engaged Call Operations	2-7
Call Log Records	2-9
Call Manager	2-12
Emergency Calls.....	2-14

3 Manner Profile

Minding Mobile Manners.....	3-2
-----------------------------	-----

Manner Profile.....	3-3
Changing Profile	3-3
Offline Mode.....	3-4

4 Entering Text

Text Entry.....	4-2
Entering Characters	4-4
Editing Text.....	4-11
Prediction (Japanese)	4-13
Learning (Japanese).....	4-13
Font Size	4-13
User Dictionary (Japanese)	4-14
SMS Templates	4-16

5 Phonebook

Saving to Phonebook.....	5-2
Category Settings	5-8
Using Phonebook.....	5-10
Editing Phonebook Entries	5-15
My Phonebook Details.....	5-18

6 Video Call

About Video Call.....	6-2
Initiating a Video Call.....	6-2
Receiving a Video Call	6-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	6-4
Video Call Settings	6-6

7 Digital TV

About Digital TV	7-2
Getting Started	7-2
Watching TV	7-7
Additional Settings.....	7-11

8 Mobile Camera

About Mobile Camera	8-2
Capturing a Still Image	8-4
Capturing Video	8-11
Mobile Camera Settings.....	8-13
Viewing Images	8-16
Editing Still Images	8-16
Editing Video.....	8-18
Create Flash®	8-20
Attaching Images	8-22

9 Display Settings

Standby Display Settings.....	9-2
Menu Display.....	9-5
Font	9-6
Backlight Brightness & Duration	9-7
Dialing Display	9-7
Display Language	9-8

10 Sound Settings

Changing Profile Settings.....	10-2
--------------------------------	------

11 Media Player

About Media Player	11-2
Playing Music	11-3
Music Settings.....	11-8
Playing Video	11-11
Video Settings.....	11-14
Streaming.....	11-17

12 Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder	12-2
Saved Files	12-3
Using Files.....	12-11
Managing Files/Folders.....	12-15
Memory Card	12-20

13 External Connections

External Connections	13-2
Bluetooth®.....	13-2
USB Connection.....	13-11
Mass Storage	13-13

14 Security

Change Phone Password.....	14-2
PIN.....	14-2
USIM Lock	14-4
Handset Security	14-5
Rejecting Incoming Calls.....	14-8
Restoring Defaults	14-11

15 Tools

Alarms.....	15-2
Calendar.....	15-5
Voice Recorder.....	15-14
World Clock	15-18
Calculator	15-19
Converter	15-19
Stopwatch.....	15-21
Dictionary (Japanese)	15-22

16 Advanced Functions

Calling Functions	16-2
Handling Incoming Calls	16-5
Status Alert.....	16-6
Simple Search	16-7
Keypad Lock.....	16-7
Idle Shortcuts.....	16-8
Set Default Memory	16-9
Memory Status	16-9

17 Optional Services

Optional Services.....	17-2
Call Forwarding	17-2
Voice Mail	17-4
Call Waiting	17-7
Conference Call.....	17-8
Call Barring.....	17-10
Caller ID.....	17-12

18 Messaging

Getting Started	18-2
Checking for New Messages	18-2
Creating Messages	18-6
Attaching/Inserting Files	18-15
Saving Created Messages	18-20

19 Messaging Folders

Viewing Messages.....	19-2
Replying to a Message	19-7
Forwarding a Message	19-8
Sending from Drafts	19-8
Sending from Unsent Messages	19-9
Deleting a Message.....	19-9
Linked Information.....	19-11
Using an Attachment.....	19-13
Managing Folders.....	19-15
From Message List.....	19-18

20 Server Mail

Message List.....	20-2
Remote Forward.....	20-3

21 Other Message Settings

Customizing Handset Address.....	21-2
S! Mail Settings	21-2
SMS Settings	21-5
3D Pictogram Settings.....	21-6

Reply with text.....21-7

22 Mobile Internet

Getting Started.....22-2

Getting Online22-3

Page Window Operations22-6

23 Mobile Internet Files

Using Image Files.....23-2

Using Sound Files.....23-4

Using Video Files.....23-6

Streaming.....23-8

Saving Pages.....23-8

Saving Bookmarks23-9

History.....23-12

Display Settings23-13

24 Other Web Settings

Preferences24-2

Security24-2

Refresh Browser.....24-6

25 S! Appli

Getting Started.....25-2

Downloading S! Appli.....25-2

Starting S! Appli25-3

Exit, Pause, & Resume.....25-3

Managing S! Appli25-4

BookSurfing® (Japanese).....25-6

S! Town (Japanese).....25-6

Near Chat (Japanese)25-8

G-GUIDE Mobile (Japanese).....25-10

Security25-10

S! Appli Settings.....25-12

26 Appendix

Function List26-2

Troubleshooting26-4

Software Update26-10

Symbols & Pictograms26-12

Memory List.....26-14

Specifications26-14

INDEX.....26-16

Warranty & Service.....26-23

Customer Service.....26-24

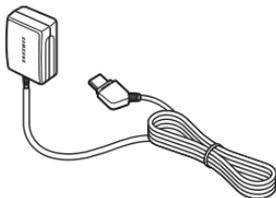
Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

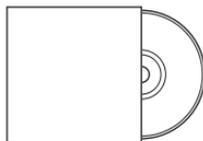
Battery



AC Charger



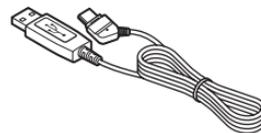
Utility Software* (CD-ROM)



Stereo Earphones



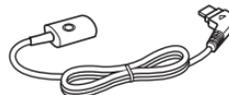
USB Cable



One-Seg Stand



Earphone Conversion Cable with Microphone



*Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available via SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

Tip

- 805SC takes microSD™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as “Memory Card” in this manual.

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 805SC is referred to as 805SC. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screen Shots and 805SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearances.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

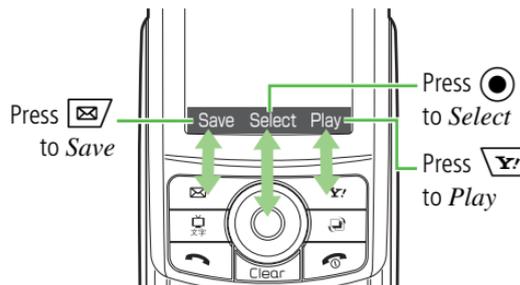
When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Symbols

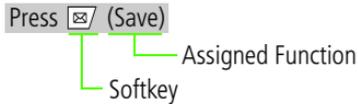
In this guide, symbols represent 805SC keys; see "Parts & Functions" (P.1-6). Softkey and Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows.

Softkeys

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display. Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



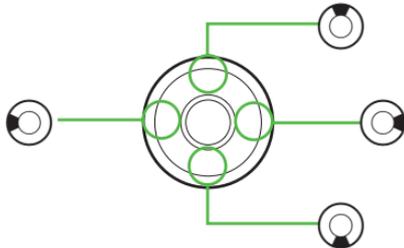
Softkey Operations



Multi Selector Operations

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, and scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

Basic Multi Selector Operations



: Press or

: Press or

: Press , , , or

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Menu Operations

Main Menu/Menu operations are simplified with arrows.

Main Menu

1 Press and select Settings →
Display settings → Wallpaper

Highlight an item and press (Select)

For details, see "805SC Menu" (➔P.1-19).

Menu

1 Select Menu → Send → Via
bluetooth

Press (Menu) to open Menu

Highlight an item and press (Select)

Safety Precautions

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

● Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

 Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use
	Prohibited Actions
	Compulsory Actions
	Attention Required

Danger

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Use only specified battery and Charger (⊕P.ix).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.

Battery

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage, or fire.

Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.
- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.
- Damage or solder on to battery.
- Use a damaged or deformed battery.
- Use a non-specified charger (⊕P.ix).
- Force battery into handset.
- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat.
- Use battery for other equipments.

Warning

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.



Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.



Fire or electric shock may occur.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.



Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

Avoid sources of fire.



To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Keep handset and Charger away from microwave ovens.



Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.

Do not disassemble or modify handset.



- Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.

If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not subject handset to shocks.



Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:



Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Fire or electric shock may result.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling station or places with risk of fire/explosion.



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may lead to fire or explosion.

Handset

Preventing accidents



- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective November 1 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by the strap.



Injury or breakage may result.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.



Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Ringtone & Vibration Settings

Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.



During thunderstorms, turn power off; move to a safe place.

There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.



Do not use handset with wet hands.

Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 8055C.



Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.



- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger: DC 100V-240V Input

Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.



Do not touch plug blades with wet hands.

Electric shock may occur.



Do not plug multiple cords in one outlet.

Excess heat or fire may occur.



Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord. Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.

Fire or electric shock may result.



Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.



Be sure to secure In-Car Charger.

Avoid injury or accidents.



Do not use AC/In-Car Charger if the cord is damaged.

Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.



During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.



Keep Charger out of the reach of children.

Electric shock or injury may result.



Battery

If battery does not charge properly, stop charging.

Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



If there is leakage or abnormal odor, keep battery away from fire sources.

It may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.

It may leak, overheat, or explode.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.



Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may be near.



Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities:



- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.



Caution

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Handset Care



- Place 805SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep 805SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.
- Keep 805SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep 805SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 805SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage Environment



- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using 805SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 805SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

805SC temperature

805SC may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.



Avoid leaving 805SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.



Volume settings

Keep handset volume moderate.

Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.



Headphones

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord; may damage the cord.
- Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.



Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.



Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Slide upper)	MG
Housing (Slide lower)	SUS
Housing (Keys side)	PC + GF20%
Keypad	PET + Urethane
Multi Selector	PC + Film + Urethane
Earpiece Ornament	Bronze/Cr3+ coating
Charger/External Device Port Cover, Memory Card Slot Cover	PC + Urethane
Battery Cover	PC + GF20%
Battery Cover Lock	PC
Side keys	PC + Urethane
Antenna	PC + Pi-Ti + STS304

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result. 
- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result. 
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. If might overheat and cause injury.

Use only the specified fuse

A 1A fuse is specified for In-Car Charger. An improper fuse may cause damage or fire. 

Always charge 805SC in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire. 

Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

Start engine before use; may weaken car battery. 

Disconnect AC/In-Car Charger during long periods of disuse.

Be sure to unplug AC/In-Car Charger after use. 

Handset Maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect AC/In-Car Charger to prevent shock or injury. 

Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents. 

Battery

Keep battery out of the reach of children.

They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset. 

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.



Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced.

Do not expose battery to liquids.



Performance may deteriorate.

If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:



Rinse with clean water immediately.

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.



Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Do not throw or abuse battery.



Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.

Charge battery within a range of 5°C - 40°C.



Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.



If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.



Do not leave battery uncharged.

Charge at least once every six months.



General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.

- **Beware of eavesdropping.**

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off).
- Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Appli; TV.
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 40°C.
- Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.

- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.

- Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
- On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
- Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 8055C is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109

5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865

5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054

5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196

5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338

5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420

5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784

5,778,338

- Video Call, 3D Pictogram, S! Appli, S! Mail and Mail Art are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

- BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.
- "SOFTBANK," SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries. **ACCESS NetFront**

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO

PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.

- Powered by JBlend™ Technology. JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are registered trade marks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.



- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- microSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.
- Bluetooth is a trademark of the  Bluetooth®. The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of 805SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.

2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (➡P.26-24) for landline numbers by service area.

805SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

805SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 805SC is 0.471 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>

ARIB: <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>

*The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.).



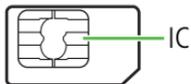
Getting Started

USIM Card	1-2	Time & Date	1-18
About USIM Card	1-2	Time & Date	1-18
USIM Card Installation	1-3	Changing Home Time Zone	1-19
USIM PINs	1-5	805SC Menus	1-19
Parts & Functions	1-6	Main Menu	1-19
Handset	1-6	Shortcuts	1-21
Display Indicators	1-9	Switch Bar	1-21
About Battery	1-11	Menu	1-22
Before Using Battery	1-11	Security Codes	1-22
Battery Installation	1-12	Phone Password	1-22
AC Charger	1-14	Center Access Code	1-23
In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-16	Network Password	1-23
Power On/Off	1-17		
Power On	1-17		
Power Off	1-17		

USIM Card

About USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 805SC; turn 805SC power off to insert/remove USIM Card.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when Inserting/removing USIM Card.

- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Notes

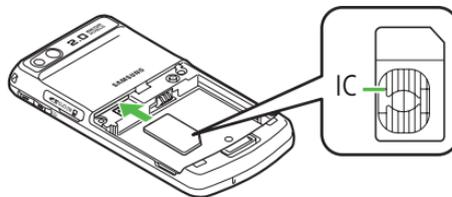
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or 805SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®, S! Appli, or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Inserting another USIM Card (not the included one) into 805SC may deactivate preinstalled S! Appli or BookSurfing® files on handset.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

USIM Card Installation

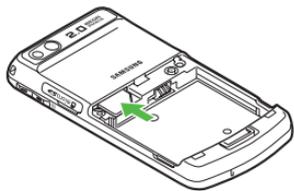
Always turn power off before opening 805SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (☎P.1-14)
- 2 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot



3 Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



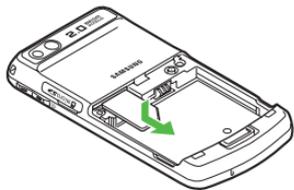
Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 805SC.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.

Removing

1 Remove battery (➔P.1-14)

2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



USIM PINs

USIM Card features two (4- to 8-digit) security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN

Use PIN to prevent unauthorized use of 805SC by others.

- Modify PIN (➔P.14-2).
- When *PIN lock* is activated, PIN entry is required each time 805SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (➔P.14-3).

PIN2

PIN2 is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (➔P.14-2).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

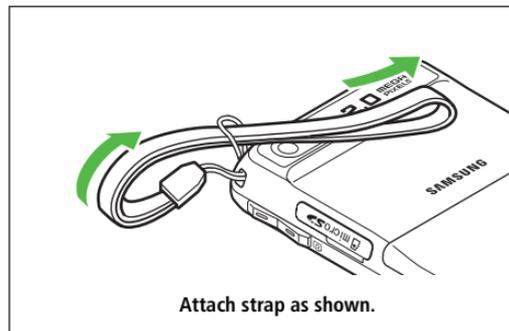
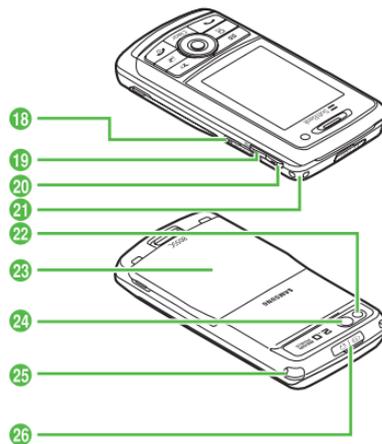
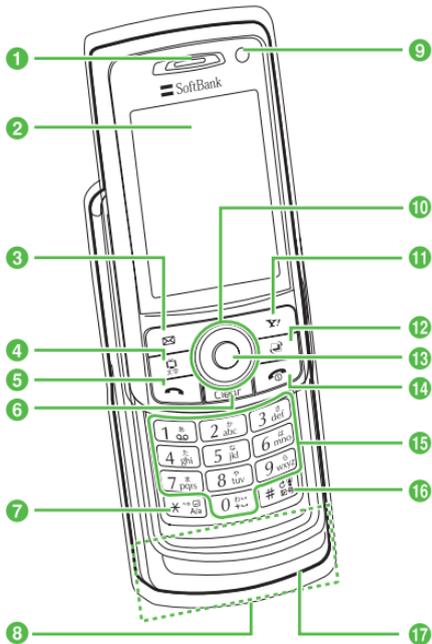
Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 805SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock. For more information, contact Customer Service (➔P.26-24).

Note

- **Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 805SC. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.**
- **Unlocking a locked USIM Card requires a special procedure. Contact Customer Service (➔P.26-24).**

Parts & Functions

Handset



1 Earpiece/Speaker**2 Display****3  Left Softkey/Mail Key**

Open Messaging menu or execute Left Softkey command/function.

4  TV/Character Key

Activate TV or select text entry mode.

5  Start Key

Initiate and receive Voice Calls.

6  Clear/Back Key

Delete entered text or return to the previous window.

7  * Key

Enter line breaks in text entry windows.

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to open Phone Profiles.

8 Internal Antenna**9 Internal Camera**

Used for capturing your own image or for Video Calls.

10  Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window.

11  Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key

Access Yahoo! Keitai or execute Right Softkey command/function.

12  Switch Bar Key

Display Switch Bar (P.1-21).

13  Center Key

Open Main Menu or execute Center Softkey command/function.

14  Power/End Key

Turn power on/off or end operations.

15  Keypad

Enter numbers or characters and select menu items.

16  #/Manner Key

Toggle Symbols menus in text entry windows.

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Profile.

17 Microphone**18 Memory Card Slot**

Insert Memory Card.

19  Side Key

Lower volume. Alternatively, reduce the image during a Video Call.

In Standby, press for 2+ seconds to activate Camera.

20  Side Key

Raise volume. Alternatively, enlarge the image during a Video Call.

21 Strap Eyelet**22 External Camera**

Capture images or send video during a Video Call.

23 Battery Cover

Open to insert or remove Battery or USIM Card.

24 Self-Portrait Mirror

Used when capturing your own image with External Camera.

25 Antenna

Used for TV reception.

26 Charger/External Device Port

Connect Charger, Stereo Earphone Microphone, USB Cable, etc. here.

Tip**• Internal Antenna**

805SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna. Voice quality may vary by where/how 805SC is used.

Opening & Closing 805SC

Use Display Lip to slide Display portion up/down as shown here.

**Tip****• Backlight**

Display backlight goes out then turns off as set in *Backlight time*; response varies by function in use.

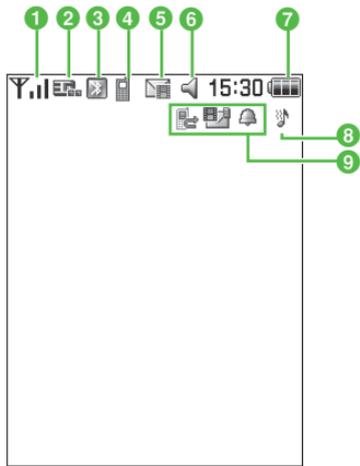
• When 805SC is closed

Press Side Keys (⏏) for 1+ seconds to turn Backlight on temporarily. When Keypad Lock is active, Backlight is turned on and a message appears notifying the lock is temporarily released.

Note

- **Make sure 805SC is completely open or closed; use in other positions may cause malfunction/injury.**

Display Indicators



- 1 Signal Strength (more bars indicate stronger signal)
Out Out-of-Range (outside service area or no signal when *Language* is set to *English* or 한국어)
 Out-of-Range (When *Language* is set to 日本語)

- 2 3G (UMTS) Network Connected
 - Web Connected
 - Web SSL Connected
- 3 (Blue) Bluetooth® Active
 - (Flashing in Blue & Pink) Bluetooth® Transmission
 - Bluetooth® Packet Data Transmission
 - Call in Progress with Bluetooth® Active
 - PC Site Browser Connected
 - (Blue) USB Connected
 - (Flashing in Orange & Yellow) USB Active
 - Packet Data Transmission
- 4 Voice Call in Progress
 - Video Call in Progress
 - Keypad Lock Set
 - S! Appli Active
 - S! Appli Paused
 - Music Playback
 - Music Paused

- 5  New S! Mail
-  New SMS
-  1418 Unheard Voice Mail
-  Unheard Answer Machine Message
-  Memory Card Inserted
-  Loading Memory Card Data
-  Software Update Required
- 6  Normal Profile
-  Manner Profile
-  Car Profile
-  Meeting Profile
-  Outdoor Profile
-  Offline Mode
- 7  Battery Strong
-  Battery Moderate
-  Battery Low
-  (Flashing) Battery Weak (Charge Now)
- 8  Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call Ringtone in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
-  Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call Ringtone in Ringtone volume Set; and Off for Voice Call in Vibration Set

-  Sound settings: Off for Voice Call Ringtone in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
-  Sound settings: Off for Voice Call Ringtone in Ringtone volume Set and Vibration Set
- 9  Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Active
-  Answer Machine Active
-  S! Mail Memory Full
-  SMS Memory Full
-  1418 Voice Mail Memory Full
-  Wake-up Alarm/Alarm Set

Tip

- When  (Red) appears, only packet data transmission and S! Mail sending are available; Voice Call, received S! Mail notification, and SMS sending/receiving are disabled.

About Battery

Before Using Battery

Charge battery before first use of 805SC or after long periods of disuse.

Charging Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge.
- 805SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in any state without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
 - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust
 - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 805SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

- Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- **Use specified Charger only. Do not use it for devices other than 805SC.**
- **Battery must be inside 805SC to charge it.**
- **When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
 - Storing/using 805SC beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - Using 805SC when signal is poor/out-of-range
 - Debris to collect on 805SC, battery or Charger Port

- Operational Factors
 - Active S! Appli
 - Camera use
 - Media Player use
 - Excessive Keypad use (e.g. for gaming or messaging)
 - Bluetooth® transmissions
 - Frequently opening and closing 805SC
 - Watching TV
- Settings
 - Using Slide Show
 - Setting Brightness higher or Backlight Time longer
 - Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always on*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

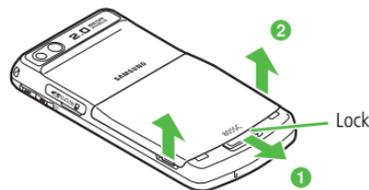
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 805SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 805SC will automatically turn off.

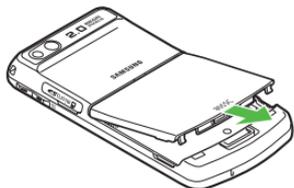
Battery Installation

Inserting

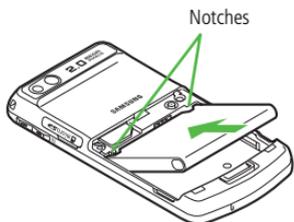
- 1 Slide Lock over and lift up Battery Cover as shown



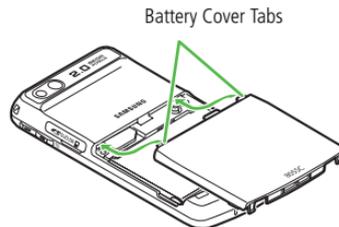
2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



3 Align Battery Slots and 805SC Notches to insert battery as shown



4 Insert Battery Cover Tabs into 805SC Slots as shown



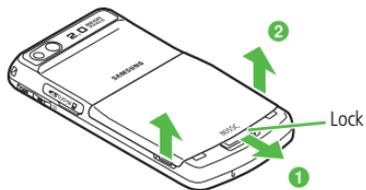
Note

- Remove battery cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.
- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging 805SC tabs.

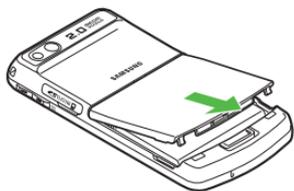
Removing

Always turn 805SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger or In-Car Charger is connected.

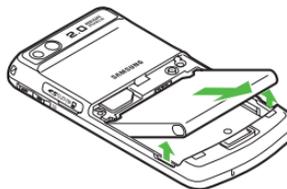
1 Slide Lock over and lift up Battery Cover as shown



2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



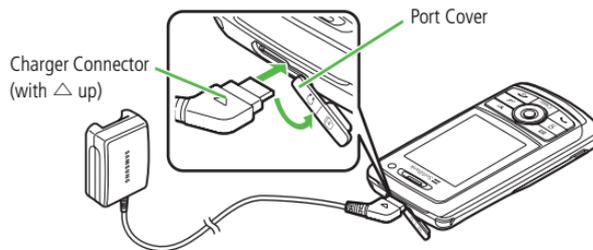
3 Lift battery up and remove as shown



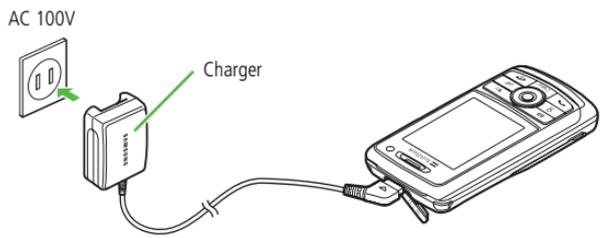
AC Charger

Use specified Charger only.

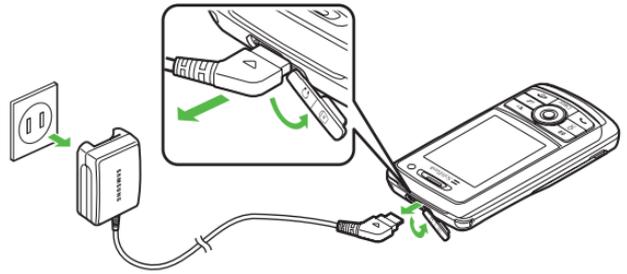
1 Open Port Cover and insert Charger Connector into the port



2 Plug Charger into an AC 100V outlet



3 When battery is charged, unplug Charger, then disconnect handset



Tip

• Battery Charged Confirmation

If 8055C is on while Charger is connected, battery indicators flash when battery is fully charged.

While charging, battery indicators change as follows:

→ → → . flashes when battery is fully charged.

If 8055C is off while Charger is connected, charging battery animation and *Charging...* appear. When battery is fully charged, full battery graphics and *Battery full* appear.

• Charging Time

An empty battery requires 170 minutes (approx.) to charge when power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

Charging via PC USB Port

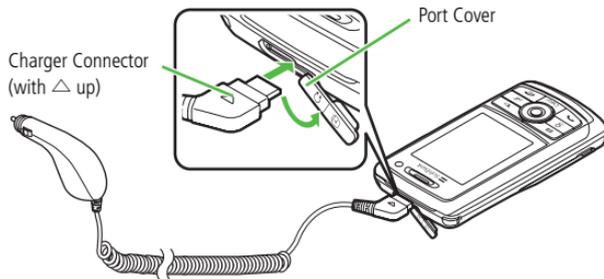
Battery will be charged when 8055C is connected to a PC via the supplied USB cable.

- ① Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector
- ② Insert USB Connector into a PC USB port
- ③ When battery is charged, remove Connector from 8055C and replace Port Cover, then remove USB Connector from the PC USB port

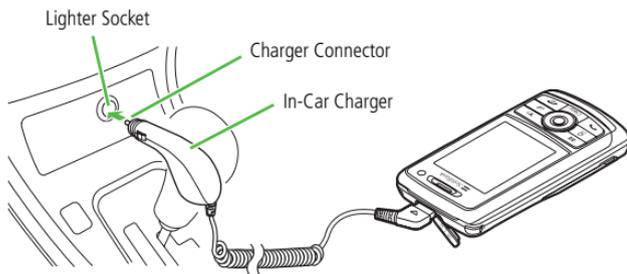
Charging via USB takes more time; charging time will vary by PC. A weak battery may not charge via a PC USB port.

In-Car Charger (Optional)

1 Open Port Cover and insert Connector

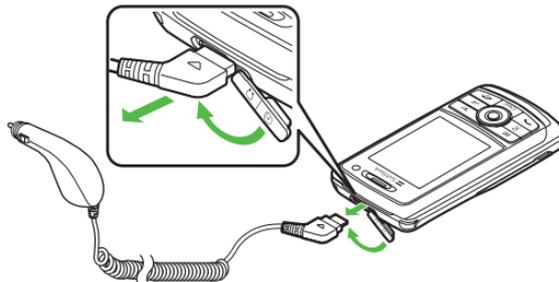


2 Insert Charger Connector into lighter socket



3 Start the car's engine

4 When battery is charged, disconnect handset (replace Port Cover), then unplug In-Car Charger



Tip

- **Battery Charged Confirmation** (⊕P.1-15)
- **Charging Time** (⊕P.1-15)
- **When using In-Car Charger**

See In-Car Charger manual about In-Car Charger operations. For safety, use In-Car Holder together with In-Car Charger.

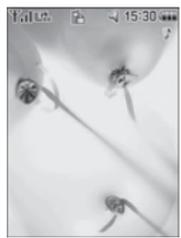
Note

- Do not charge battery in ambient temperatures over 40°C (e.g. inside a closed automobile in direct sunlight, etc.).
- Use In-Car Charger in cars with a negative earth only (DC 12/24V).

Power On/Off

Power On

- 1 Open 805SC
- 2 Press  for 1+ seconds



Standby

Tip

- **To confirm handset phone number**
In Standby, press  → ; your phone number appears in My Phonebook Details. Edit or perform Menu operations (P.5-18).
- **When 805SC is left open without operations**
Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (P.9-7).

Note

- Gently slide front face to open and close 805SC; avoid using excessive force which could damage handset or lead to malfunctions.

Power Off

- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds and confirm
Display is turned off

Time & Date

Time & Date

- Default Setting**
- Time format: 24H
 - Date format: YYYY/MM/DD

Some 805SC functions cannot be used unless time and date are set. Open Time & Date to change Time Format or Date Format.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Time & date*

2 Set items

Time

Highlight Time field and enter the time (24-hour format)

AM/PM (for 12-hour format)

- ① Highlight Time field and press  twice for AM/PM option
- ② Use  to toggle AM and PM

Date

Highlight Date field and enter the year, month, and day

Time format

- ① Select Time format field
- ② Select the setting and press 

Date format

- ① Select Date format field
- ② Select the setting and press 

3 Press (Save)

Note

- *Time zone updating* is disabled even when the setting is changed.

Changing Home Time Zone

- Default Setting**
- Home zone: GMT+9h
 - Daylight saving: Unchecked

Select the zone closest to your locality. Set Daylight saving time as required. Complete this setting before selecting Dual Clock in Clock Display (P.9-4).

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Time & date*

2 Select Home zone field

3 Set items

Home time zone

- ① Use  to specify a target area
- ② Press 

Daylight saving time

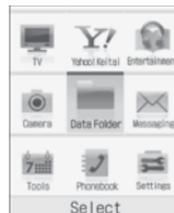
- ① Check *Daylight saving*
- ② Press  (OK)

4 Press  (Save)

805SC Menu

Main Menu

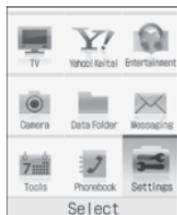
1 In Standby, press 



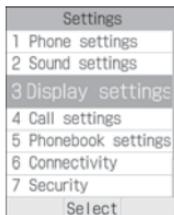
Main Menu

- 2** Highlight an item and press  (Select)
- 3** Repeat Step 2 to open/activate the target function

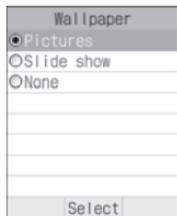
<Example> Select *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*



Highlight *Settings* and press **(Select)**



Highlight *Display settings* and press **(Select)**



Wallpaper Setup Window appears



Select *Wallpaper Pictures* and press **(Select)**

Tip

• **To end an operation**

Press . Operation ends and 805SC returns to Standby. When multiple functions are active, the next active operation window appears.

• **To cancel/escape an operation**

Press . Operation/function is canceled and 805SC returns to Standby or the previous window appears. For some menus, a confirmation appears.

• **Menu operations (⊙P.xi)**

When Popup Menu (⊙P.9-5) is On

The sub-item is popped up when an item is highlighted in Step 2. Content is different, however operations remain the same.

Selecting items with Keypad

When numbered items appear in menus, etc., use Keypad to select them.

Shortcuts

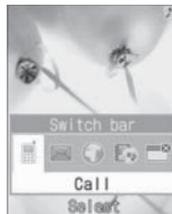
In Standby, press a key to open the assigned shortcut.

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
	Messaging
	Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
 (1+ seconds)	Yahoo! Keitai Menu
	TV activation
 (1+ seconds)	TV Menu
	Switch Bar
	Idle shortcut*
	Phonebook list
	Call Log (<i>Received</i>)
	Call Log (<i>Dialled</i>)
	Call Log (<i>Current Contacts</i>)
	Recordings list
 (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Answer Machine
 (1+ seconds)	Phone Profiles
 (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Manner Profile
 (2+ seconds)	Camera activation

* Create shortcuts for frequently used functions in Idle shortcut (P.16-8).

Switch Bar

Initiate *Call, Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai, or Media Player*; use multiple functions concurrently (e.g., create a message while listening to music, or browse the Mobile Internet while talking on the phone).



1 In Standby or an active function window, press 

2 Use to highlight a function and press (Select)

To exit an active function

From the window of the function to exit, press 

To exit all active functions

① Press 

② Use  to highlight *End all?* and press  (Yes)

Tip

- **When exiting all active functions**

Even while creating a message or browsing Yahoo! Keitai homepage, all active functions are exited without confirmation. To exit after confirmation, press  to exit one by one. Exiting all active functions during message creation or voice/video recording deletes created/recorded data.

Menu

When *Menu* appears at the bottom-right of Display, press  to open *Menu*. To execute an option, highlight the item and press  (Select).

Tip

- See "Menu" (➔P.xi)

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use 8055C.

Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) required to use/change some handset functions.

- Entered digits are represented with*
- If incorrect, an error message appears; try again.
- Change Phone Password as required (➔P.14-2)

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to access Voice Mail via landlines/to subscribe to fee-based information.

Center Access Code cannot be changed on 805SC; a special procedure is required.

For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

Network Password

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering Network Password incorrectly three consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

- Network Password can be changed on 805SC (☎P.17-12).

Note

- **Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password. If you forget any of these codes, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).**
- **Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.**

Basic Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2	Deleting Call Log Records	2-10
Receiving a Call	2-3	Call Log Menu	2-11
Rejecting Incoming Call	2-5	Call Manager	2-12
Answer Machine	2-5	Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times	2-12
Activating & Canceling	2-5	Edit Cost Limit	2-13
Ringing Duration	2-6	Display Call Cost after Call Ends	2-13
Sound Language	2-6	Emergency Calls	2-14
Checking Recordings	2-6		
Engaged Call Operations	2-7		
Earpiece Volume	2-7		
Hold	2-7		
Speaker Phone	2-7		
Voice Recording	2-8		
Engaged Call Menu	2-8		
Call Log Records	2-9		
Viewing Call Log Records	2-9		
Calling from Call Log Records	2-10		

Initiating a Call

See P.5-10 to call from a Phonebook entry or P.6-2 to initiate a Video Call.

1 Enter a phone number

When Phonebook list appears (☞P.5-12)

To use Speed Dialing (☞P.5-13)

2 Confirm the number and press

3 Press to end the call

Tip

- **To correct entered digits**

Press  to delete the last digit. Press  for 1+ seconds to delete all.

- **To enter "P (Pause)" or "+" (International Code)" as a phone number**

Press  for 1+ seconds to enter P or press  for 1+ seconds to enter +.

- **When the line is busy**

Press  to end the call and try again later. If Auto Redial (☞P.16-2) is active, number is automatically redialed. Press  (Cancel) or  to cancel redialing.

- **When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**

Enter a number and press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to initiate a call. When *Earphone call* is *On*, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. Press switch for 1+ seconds to end a call.

- **Engaged Call Operations (☞P.2-7)**

Placing international calls from Japan

A separate subscription is required for international calls. For details, contact Customer Service (☞P.26-24).

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2 *Menu* → *International dial*
- 3 Select country or *Enter Code* for direct entry
- 4 Confirm the number and press 

Using a SoftBank handset overseas

Enter handset phone number; country code is not required.

Menu

Item	Description
Video call	Initiate a Video Call.
Add to Phonebook	Save a number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (➔P.18-6).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Call log	Open Call Log.
International dial	Add international code and country code to a number (➔P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Hide or show your phone number when placing calls; select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID settings (➔P.17-12). Select <i>Show my ID</i> to show your phone number. Select <i>Hide my ID</i> not to show your phone number.

Receiving a Call

- 1 When 8055C rings/vibrates, press  or  (Accept)
- 2 Press  to end the call

Tip

- **When Anykey Answer (➔P.16-5) is On**
Press any key except , ,  and Side Key   to answer Voice Calls.
- **To mute ringtone for an incoming call**
While 8055C rings/vibrates, press  (Mute); caller continues to hear ringback tone. To answer the call, press  (Accept).
- **To adjust ringer volume**
While 8055C rings/vibrates, press Side Key  or .
- **When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**
When 8055C rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept a call. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.
- **Engaged Call Operations (➔P.2-7)**

📞 Ringtones

Specify ringtones for saved numbers by Phonebook entry or Category (📞P.5-4, 5-8). When no ringtone is set, 8055C rings according to Profile Settings (📞P.10-2).

Under following conditions, 8055C rings according to each Profile; Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to *Secret - On*.

📞 Incoming call window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears; if saved in Phonebook, name appears. When an image is set in Phonebook or Category, image also appears (📞P.5-4, 5-8). If caller hides Caller ID, *Withheld* appears.

Under following conditions, no name/image appears; Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to *Secret - On*.

📞 Missed call window

After an unanswered incoming call, Missed call window appears. Press  (View), to open Missed Call Log (📞P.2-9).

📞 When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding/Voice Mail to forward incoming calls to a specified number automatically/to save messages at Voice Mail Center. When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set to *No reply*, press  (Busy) to forward an incoming call immediately (📞P.17-3, 17-4).

Use Answer Machine to record caller messages. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded in 8055C (📞P.2-5).

Rejecting Incoming Call

Proactively disconnect an incoming call without answering it. The rejected call is recorded in *Missed*.

1 While 805SC rings/vibrates, press 

Tip

- **When Side Key is set to *Reject***
Press  or  for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- **To reject call and send *User busy* message**
When neither Call Forwarding (➔P.17-2) nor Voice Mail (➔P.17-4) is active, press  (Busy) to proactively disconnect a call without answering it; "busy" message appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.
- **To automatically reject a call (➔P.14-8)**

Answer Machine

Record caller messages on handset. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded.

Activating & Canceling

Default Setting  Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Setting*
- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Answer Machine.

Note

- Answer Machine cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in *Offline mode*. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages.
- If 805SC shared memory (P.26-14) is below 600 KB, Answer Machine cannot be used.

 With Answer Machine set

In Standby,  appears.

 Ringing Duration

Default Setting ■ 18 seconds

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Ringing duration*
- 2 Select an item, or select *Other (0-60Secs)* and press  to set a time
- 3 Press  (Save)

 Sound Language

Default Setting ■ 日本語

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Sound language*
- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)

 Checking Recordings

When Answer Machine records caller messages,  appears in Display.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Recordings*
- 2 Highlight a message to check and press  (Play)

Tip

- **Alternatively, in Standby, press  to view Recording list.**
- **To delete messages**
Highlight a message in a list, press  (Delete) and select *Yes*.

Engaged Call Operations

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after power off.

- 1 **During a call, press Side Key  or **

Hold

When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice.

A subscription to Call Waiting (➔P.17-7) or Conference Call (➔P.17-8) is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.

- 1 **During a call, press  (Hold)**
- 2 **Press  (Retrieve) to reconnect the call**

Speaker Phone

- 1 **During a call, press  () and select *Yes***

To cancel Speaker Phone

Press  ()

Voice Recording

Record voice of a maximum of 2 minutes during a call.

1 During a call, select *Menu* → *Record*

2 Press  (Record)

3 Stop or pause

To stop and save

Press  (Stop)

To pause

① Press  (Pause)

② Press  (Record) to restart recording; press  (Stop) to end recording

Tip

- **When a recording is made**

Files are saved to Sounds & Ringtones folder in Data Folder.

- **When another party calls during recording**

If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops and incoming call window appears.

- **When call is ended while recording**

Recording stops automatically and voice file is saved.

Engaged Call Menu

Item	Description
Whisper on/off	With <i>On</i> , raise the volume of sent sounds.
Mute	Check <i>Voice</i> or <i>Key tone</i> and press  (OK) to cancel sending no sounds or key tones.
New call	Enter a number and press  (Call) to initiate another call; requires subscription to Conference Call (➔P.17-8).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (➔P.18-6).
Send DTMF	Enter digits then press  (Send).
Record	Record caller's voice during a call (➔P.2-8).
Memo	Create and save text memos (➔P.15-9).
End call	Disconnect call.

Item	Description
Switch to headset/ Switch to phone	Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

Call Log Records

Viewing Call Log Records

Current contacts	All incoming and outgoing calls
Missed	All missed incoming calls
Received	All received incoming calls
Dialled	All outgoing calls

1 Press 

2 Use  to select a Call Log

To confirm phone number and call duration

Highlight an item and press  (View)

Call Log Record Indicators

      : Voice Call to/from a number saved in Phonebook

 : Call to/from a number saved in USIM Card Phonebook

 : Voice Call to/from an unsaved number

 : Video Call to/from a number saved in Phonebook

Current Contacts (all incoming/outgoing calls) Indicators

 : Received call

 : Rejected incoming call

 : Missed call

 : Dialled call

Tip

- While **Secret Mode** is set to **Hide**

For Phonebook entries with Secret Mode set to *Secret - On*, caller's information (name, etc.) saved in Phonebook does not appear in a Call log.

Calling from Call Log Records

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use  to select a Call Log
- 3 Highlight a record and press 
 - To initiate a Video Call
 - Menu* → *Video call*

Deleting Call Log Records

Deleting a Single Record

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use  to select a Call Log
- 3 Highlight a record, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

Tip

- To delete individual calls from records
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Highlight a record and press  (View)
 - ③ Highlight a call, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

Deleting Multiple Records

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use  to select a Call Log
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- 4 Check a record to delete
- 5 Repeat Step 4 to check records to delete
- 6 Press  (Delete)
 - When all records are checked
 - Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

Deleting All Records

Delete all records in a Call Log at once.

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use  to select a Call Log
To delete all Call Log records at once
Use  to select *Current contacts*
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*
- 4 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

Call Log Menu

Item	Description
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the current number.
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the current number (➤P.2-10).
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➤P.5-7).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the current number (➤P.18-6).
Delete	Delete the current Call Log record (➤P.2-10).
Add to black list	Add the number to Black List (➤P.14-10).
View phonebook details	Open Entry details for a number.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (➤P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Hide or show your phone number when placing calls; select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID settings.

Call Manager

Data counter	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing data volume.
Call costs	Confirm/reset Total Costs, Last Call Cost or Cost Limit; change Call Costs currency unit.
Call times	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing Voice/ Video Call Times.

Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager*

2 Select an item

To reset a Data Counter item

- ① In Data counter, highlight an item, select *Menu* → *Reset*
- ② Select *Yes*

To reset all Data Counter items

- ① In Data counter, highlight an item, select *Menu* → *Reset all*
- ② Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm), and select *Yes*

To reset Call Costs

- ① In Call costs, select *Menu* → *Reset call cost*
- ② Enter PIN2 and press  (Confirm)

To reset Call Times

- ① In Call times, highlight an item, select *Menu* → *Reset*
- ② Select *Yes*

To reset all Call Times

- ① In Call times, highlight an item, select *Menu* → *Reset all*
- ② Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm) → *Yes*

To change Call Costs currency unit

- ① In Call costs, select *Menu* → *Setup currency*
- ② Enter PIN2 and press  (Confirm)
- ③ Highlight Price field to enter a price in Yen
- ④ Select Currency field and enter currency unit
- ⑤ Press  (Save)

Edit Cost Limit

After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls (P.2-14) can be initiated; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager*
- 2 Select *Call costs*
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Edit cost limit*
- 4 Enter PIN2 and press  (Confirm)
- 5 Enter limit

Note

- *Edit call cost* is not available when *Display call cost* is disabled.

Display Call Cost after Call Ends

Default Setting ■ Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager* → *Display call cost*
- 2 Select setting and press  (Save)

Note

- *Display call cost* may not be available.

Emergency Calls

Some emergency numbers (110 (Police), 119 (Fire), etc.) are available even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

805SC Status	Available Numbers
<i>Offline mode</i> (☞P.3-4) is active.	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (☞P.2-13).	110, 119, 118
<i>Phone lock</i> (☞P.14-5) is active.	None
<i>Password lock</i> (☞P.14-5) is active.	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (☞P.14-3).	None
USIM Card cannot be authenticated (☞P.14-4).	None
Outgoing Call Barring (☞P.17-10) is active.	110, 119, 118

Emergency Positioning Request

When an emergency call is made from a mobile phone, location is reported to first response agencies such as the police.

- Location information may be inaccurate due to location or signal conditions. Describe location or nearby landmarks.
- Base Station Positioning System is accurate within 100 meters to 10 kilometers. Location information from distant base stations may be inaccurate.
- Function available where first response agencies have completed system installation.
- Dialing 184 before 110, 118 or 119, cancels location report. However, first responders may obtain location information for immediate and serious threats to life.
- No subscription/connection fee is required.



Manner Profile

Minding Mobile Manners	3-2
Manner Related Functions	3-2
Manner Profile	3-3
Changing Profile	3-3
Offline Mode	3-4

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using 805SC.

- Turn 805SC off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep 805SC off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using 805SC in places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Related Functions

805SC offers two manner-related profiles.

Manner Profile

Silence 805SC sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner Profile.

Offline Mode

Temporarily suspend 805SC transmissions; other 805SC functions may still be used while Offline Mode is active.

Muting/vibrating 805SC can be selected respectively for alert tone, ringtone, or alarm in Sound settings other than Manner Profile/Offline Mode.

Manner Profile

1 In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds

Tip

- When Manner Profile is active  appears.
- Even when Manner Profile is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.

Changing Profile

805SC features five Profiles, including Manner Profile.

1 In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds

2 Select a Profile

3 Press  (Save)

Tip

- To change 805SC Profile (➡P.10-2)

Profiles

Select a Profile by usage and edit settings as required (➡P.10-2).

Profile	Description
 Normal	Normal sounds output from 805SC
 Manner	No sounds output from 805SC
 Car	Set Automatic reception of Voice Calls and activation of Speaker Phone
 Meeting	Ringtone or Key tone preset to Vibration or Mute
 Outdoor	Ringtone or Key tone preset to maximum sound volume

Offline Mode

Default Setting ■ Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Offline mode*
- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- If 805SC is turned off while *Offline mode* is active *Offline mode* activation confirmation appears the next time 805SC is turned on. Press  (No) to select Normal Profile.

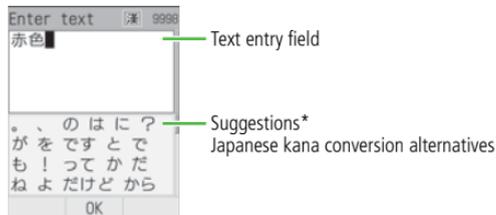
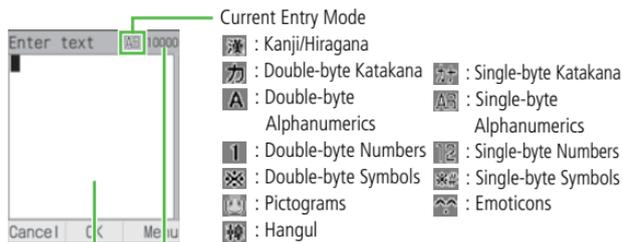
Entering Text

Text Entry	4-2	Prediction (Japanese)	4-13
Text Entry Window.....	4-2	Learning (Japanese)	4-13
Changing Text Entry Mode.....	4-2	Font Size	4-13
Key Assignments.....	4-3	User Dictionary (Japanese)	4-14
Entering Characters	4-4	Saving to User Dictionary.....	4-15
Hiragana/Kanji.....	4-4	SMS Templates	4-16
Katakana.....	4-6		
Alphanumerics.....	4-7		
Numbers.....	4-8		
Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons.....	4-8		
Line Breaks.....	4-9		
Quoting Saved Text.....	4-9		
Hangul (Korean).....	4-10		
Editing Text	4-11		
Deleting.....	4-11		
Copy/Cut, Paste & Undo.....	4-11		
Jump.....	4-12		

Text Entry

Enter kanji/hiragana/hangul, single- or double-byte katakana, alphanumerics, or symbols/pictograms/emoticons.

Text Entry Window



* Suggestions appear only in Kanji/Hiragana mode, when Prediction setting is *On*.

Number Only Text Entry Fields

Text entry windows do not appear for Date field in *Time & date* or Time field in *Alarm*; enter numbers directly.

Changing Text Entry Mode

Text Entry modes may be limited in some text entry fields or windows.

1 In a text entry window, press 

1.漢かな	6.12
2.カナ	7.12
3.ｶ	8.！@#
4.AB	9.！#
5.AB	0.Pictog-
*.Emoti_	#.Hangul

2 Highlight entry mode and press 

Tip

- To toggle symbols

In text entry windows, press  to toggle Symbols, Pictograms, and Emoticons.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	._@-_/:'~ ¹ 1	1
	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	abcABC2	2
	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	defDEF3	3
	たちつてとっ 4	タチツテトツ 4	ghiGHI4	4
	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	jklJKL5	5
	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	mnoMNO6	6
	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	pqrPQRS7	7
	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8	tuvTUV8	8
	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
	わをんわ、。ー・～！？ <Space> 0	ワヲンワ ² 、。ー・～！？ <Space> 0	.,-;! ? <Space> 0	0
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Toggle upper/lower-case; add " / " to unfixed, convertible kana Enter Line Break 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Toggle upper/lower-case Enter Line Break 	Enter Line Break
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection Toggle Pictograms, Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons 			Toggle Pictograms, Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons

¹ When double-byte, "～" cannot be used ("～" appears on Display). ² Single-byte "ワ" (lower case) cannot be entered.

☒ When calls/alarms interrupt text entry

Answer incoming calls without saving text first; disconnect call to return to text entry window. Similarly, close Alarm window to return to text entry window.

Entering Characters

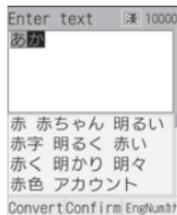
Hiragana/Kanji

4

Entering Text

Enter hiragana/kanji with or without conversion predictions. When Prediction setting is *On*, Suggestions appear below text entry window.

1 Activate Kanji/Kana entry mode to enter hiragana



To add ` or °

Enter a valid character and press 

To correct a misentry

Use  to delete the character then enter the correction

When key is pressed too many times

Press  to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press  to move cursor to the right

To enter unconverted hiragana

Press  (Confirm)

2 Convert hiragana

To select a conversion from Suggestions

- ① Press  to move between Suggestions
- ② Highlight a conversion and press  (Confirm)



When target conversion does not appear

- ① Press  (Convert)
- ② Use  to change the conversion range
- ③ Press  to move to Suggestions
- ④ Highlight a conversion and press  (Confirm)
- ⑤ Repeat steps ② through ④ as required

Tip

- **When characters are not converted to target Kanji**
Try entering different readings. When multiple Kanji characters do not convert together, try them separately.
- **To toggle predicted/conversion alternatives**
While predicted alternatives appear, press  (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, press  (Predict) for predicted alternatives.
- **To set/release prediction entry function (P.4-13)**
- **To convert using *User dictionary* (P.4-14)**
- **To enter date/time**
 - ① Press a key to enter a key to which numbers are assigned
 - ② Press  (EngNum力)
 - ③ Highlight a conversion alternative and press  (Confirm)

Resetting Text Entry History

Previous kanji conversions appear first for predicted/conversion alternatives. Follow these steps to restore defaults.

- 1 Press and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Reset learning*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) → *Yes*

Katakana

In Katakana entry mode, press a key to enter the assigned character



To add ` or °

Enter a Katakana to which a voiced or semi-voiced sound symbol should be added and press .

To correct a misentry

Use to delete character then correct

When key is pressed too many times

Press to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press to move cursor to the right

Tip

- To enter Katakana in Kanji/Kana entry mode
For example, to convert "くも" to "クモ" or "クモ".



- 1 In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter hiragana
- 2 Press (EngNumカカ)
- 3 Highlight katakana conversion alternative and press (Confirm)

Alphanumerics

- 1 In Alphanumerics entry mode, press a key to enter the assigned character



To toggle upper and lower case

Enter a character and press 

To correct a misentry

Use  to delete the character and press the correct key

When key is pressed too many times

Press  to return to a previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press  to move cursor to the right

Tip

- To enter alphanumerics in Kanji/Kana entry mode

Press key(s) assigned to alphanumerics as many times as it would take to enter same character(s) in Alphanumerics mode. For example, press  three times and press

 once to enter "cd."

- ① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press key to which alphanumerics is assigned
- ② Press  (EngNum力力)
- ③ Highlight alphanumeric conversion alternative and press  (Confirm)

Numbers

- 1 In Number entry mode, press number keys



To correct a misentry

Use  to delete the entry, then enter correction

Tip

- To enter numbers in Kanji/Kana entry mode

- ① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press key to which numbers is assigned
- ② Press  (EngNum力力)
- ③ Highlight number conversion alternative and press  (Confirm)

Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

- 1 In a text entry window, press  to toggle symbols

To toggle double-byte/single-byte symbols

While Symbols appear, press 

- 2 Highlight target character and press 

To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons successively

Press  (Continue)



Tip

- **To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons in Kanji/Kana entry mode**

Enter hiragana like *てん* and press  (Convert), symbols *・* and *…* appear among conversion alternatives. Similarly, convert *はーと* or *でんわ* to pictograms and *わーい* or *えーん* to emoticons.

Line Breaks

Enter a line break the same way in all text entry modes.

- 1 In a text entry window, press 

Quoting Saved Text

Using Phonebook Entries

In a text entry window, use *Phonebook* via *Menu* to search saved entries for inserting phone numbers or mail addresses into message text.

- 1 In message text, select *Menu* → *Phonebook*
- 2 Select an entry and open details
- 3 Highlight an item and press  (Select)

SMS Template

In a text entry window, use *SMS template* via *Menu* to quote saved text in SMS.

Save frequently used words/phrases as SMS templates beforehand (☞P.4-16).

1 In message text, select *Menu* → *SMS template*

2 Select a template

Using Template

In a text entry window, use *Templates* via *Menu* to save "http://www" or ".ne.jp" in Phonebook for one keystroke entry.

1 In message text, select *Menu* → *Templates*

2 Select an item

Hangul (Korean)

Select Hangul entry mode to enter Hangul characters.

1 In a text entry window, press  and select *Hangul*

2 Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels

Consonant Example (Key Assignment)			
ㄱ	 (once)	ㅋ	 (twice)
		ㆁ	 (three times)
Vowel Example (Key Assignment)			
ㅏ	  (ㅏ),  (.)	ㅑ	   
ㅓ	  (.),  (ㅓ)	ㅕ	   
ㅗ	  (.),  (ㅗ)	ㅛ	   
ㅛ	  (.),  (ㅛ),  (ㅓ),  (.),  (ㅏ)		

Editing Text

Deleting

- 1 Use  to highlight character to delete and press 

When a space is highlighted

The character before cursor is deleted.

To delete all text on/after cursor

Press  for 1+ seconds

To delete all text

Place cursor at the end of text and press  for 1+ seconds

Copy/Cut, Paste & Undo

Copy/Cut

Select a range of characters to copy/cut. Paste copied/cut characters repeatedly to other locations.

- 1 In a text entry window, select *Menu* → *Copy* or *Cut*
- 2 Use  to highlight the first character in the range and press  (Start)
To copy/cut all
Press  (All)
- 3 Use  to specify range and press  (End)

Tip

- **To copy text from Phonebook entries or My Phonebook Details**

Menu → *Copy item* (☞P.5-14, 5-18)

- **Copied/cut items**

Up to 10 copied/cut items can be saved. Content remains even power is turned off. With 10 items are already saved, oldest item is automatically deleted.

Paste

- 1 Use  to move cursor to paste location
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Paste*
- 3 Select an item to paste and press  (Select)

Tip

- **To delete copied/cut items**

In Step 3, highlight item to delete, press  (Delete) and select *Yes*.

Undo

Undo operations immediately after performing such as Cut, Paste, or Delete. Alternatively, undo converting operations immediately after character conversion; this operation can be performed in Kanji/Kana entry mode only.

- 1 In a text entry window, select *Menu* → *Undo*

Jump

- 1 In a text entry window, select *Menu* → *Jump* → *Top* or *End*

Prediction (Japanese)

Default Setting On

Select to show/hide Japanese kana conversion alternatives in Suggestions.

**] In a text entry window, select *Menu*
→ *Prediction On* or *Prediction Off***

Learning (Japanese)

Default Setting On

Select to save/discard entered character strings by Suggestions.

**] In a text entry window, select *Menu*
→ *Learning On* or *Learning Off***

Font Size

Default Setting Large

Change font size for SMS, S! Mail, or template text; available sizes vary.

] In message text, select *Menu* → *Font Size*

User Dictionary (Japanese)

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when key characters are entered.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *New entry*
- 2 Select **Word** field and enter text
- 3 Select **Reading** field and enter key characters
- 4 Press  (Save)

Tip

• To edit User Dictionary entries

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Edit entry*
- ② Select contents to edit
- ③ Edit a word or readings and press  (Save)

• To delete one item

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Edit entry*
- ② Highlight item to delete, select *Menu* → *Delete*

• To delete all items

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Delete all*
- ② Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) → *Yes*

Saving to User Dictionary

- 1 In a text entry window, select *Menu*
→ *Word registration*
- 2 Use  to move cursor to the first character, press  (Start)
To open User Dictionary window to check saved contents, etc.
Press  (UserDic)
- 3 Use  to set the range, press  (End)
- 4 Select Reading field and enter reading
- 5 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **When the range contains a line break**
Character string before line break is saved to dictionary.
- **To edit User dictionary**
Press  (UserDic) to select start point for Word registration; perform operations in "User Dictionary (Japanese)" (P.4-14). Select *Edit entry* and registered entries appear.

SMS Templates

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 70 characters.

1 Press  and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new*

When no SMS templates have been saved

Press  (Add new)

3 Press  (Select) and enter text

4 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **To use an SMS template (P.4-10)**
- **To edit an SMS template**
 - ① Press  and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*
 - ② Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)
 - ③ Press  (Select) and edit the text
 - ④ Press  (Save)
- **To delete an SMS template**
 - ① Press  and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*
 - ② Highlight an item to delete, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all SMS templates, in step ②, select *Delete* → *All*, enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*. To delete multiple items, in step ②, select *Delete* → *Multiple*, check items to delete, press  (Delete) → *Yes*.

Phonebook

Saving to Phonebook	5-2	My Phonebook Details	5-18
Phonebook Entry Items	5-2		
Adding Entry Items	5-4		
Saving from Call Log Records	5-7		
Category Settings	5-8		
New Category (USIM Card)	5-8		
Edit Category.....	5-8		
Add Member	5-9		
Using Phonebook	5-10		
Calling from Phonebook	5-10		
Speed Dialing	5-13		
Phonebook Menu	5-14		
Editing Phonebook Entries	5-15		
Edit	5-15		
Default Number	5-15		
Copy to USIM & Copy to Phone	5-16		
Deleting Entries	5-17		

Saving to Phonebook

Phonebook Entry Items

Save phone numbers, mail addresses, and more for up to 1,000 entries in Phonebook; USIM Card Phonebook capacity varies by card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries. Each 805SC Phonebook entry contains items listed below.

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		805SC	USIM Card
Entry Number	a 3-digit number	Yes (000-999) ¹	Yes (000-0XX) ²
Last name	Single-/double-byte characters (<i>Name</i> in USIM Card Phonebook)	Yes (Up to 25 characters)	Yes ³
First name			
Reading last name	Single-byte characters (<i>Reading name</i> in USIM Card Phonebook)	Yes (Up to 25 characters)	Yes ³
Reading first name			

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		805SC	USIM Card
Phone Number	Saved with area code	Yes (5 of up to 40 digits each)	Yes ^{2 3}
Phone Icon	Select one of 6 icons	Yes	No (1 icon)
Email	Single-byte alphanumerics	Yes (4 of up to 256 characters each)	Yes ³ (1 address)
Email Icon	Select one of 4 icons	Yes	No (1 icon)
Category	Select one of 20 categories	Yes	Yes ²
Caller ID	Select incoming call image from Data Folder	Yes	No
Call Notice	Select incoming call ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		805SC	USIM Card
Message Notice	Select incoming S! Mail/SMS ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No
Blood Type	Select one of four blood types	Yes	No
Birthday	Enter the party's date of birth	Yes	No
Address	Up to 20 single-byte characters for Post code, 32 single-/double-byte characters for Country, 64 each for State/Province, City, Address, and Additional information	Yes (2 addresses)	No
Hobby	Up to 100 single-/double-byte characters	Yes	No
Company	Up to 32 single-/double-byte characters	Yes	No
Job Title	Up to 32 single-/double-byte characters	Yes	No

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		805SC	USIM Card
URL	Up to 512 single-/double-byte alphanumeric	Yes (2 URLs)	No
URL Icon	Select one of 3 icons	Yes	No
Notes	Up to 256 single-/double-byte characters	Yes	No
Secret Mode	Select secret setting	Yes	No

- 1 Use speed dialing (☎P.5-13) to initiate voice calls to primary number saved in Phonebook Entry Numbers 000 - 099.
- 2 The number of items that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.
- 3 The number of characters that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.

Note

- **Protect important information**

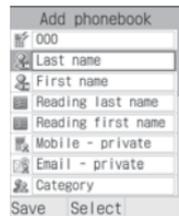
Phonebook entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information.

Using Phonebook entries for the first time after replacing USIM Card

A confirmation appears: Select *Yes* to copy entries saved in USIM Card to 8055C.

Adding Entry Items

8055C assigns lowest available Entry Number; edit as required.



Phonebook Details

1 Press  and select *Menu* → *Add to*
→ *Phone* or *USIM*

2 Add additional items as required

Entry number

- ① Select Entry number field
- ② Enter a number

Last name

- ① Select Last name field
- ② Enter a last name

First name

- ① Select First name field
- ② Enter a first name

To modify Reading last name

- ① Select Reading last name field
- ② Enter a reading for last name

To modify Reading first name

- ① Select Reading first name field
- ② Enter a reading for first name (use katakana to organize entries in Phonebook list)

Phone number

- ① Select Phone number field
- ② Enter a number
- ③ Select an icon

Mail address

- ① Select Email field
- ② Enter an address
- ③ Select an icon

Category

- ① Select Category field
- ② Select a category

Caller ID for a Voice Call or Video Call*

- ① Select Caller ID field
- ② Select *On*
- ③ Open Data Folder to select an image file, etc.

Call notice for a Voice or Video Call*

- ① Select Call notice field
- ② Select *On*
- ③ Open Data Folder to select a file

S! Mail/SMS Notice*

- ① Select Message notice field
- ② Select *On*
- ③ Select sound

Blood type*

- ① Select Blood type field
- ② Select a blood type

Birthday*

- ① Select Birthday field
- ② Enter a birthday

Address*

- ① Select Address field
- ② Enter a postal code
- ③ Select Address field and enter an address
- ④ Press  (OK)

Hobby*

- ① Select Hobby field
- ② Enter text

Company name*

- ① Select Company field
- ② Enter a company name

Job Title*

- ① Select Job title field
- ② Enter a job title

URL*

- ① Select URL field
- ② Enter a URL
- ③ Select an icon

Memo*

- ① Select Note field
- ② Enter text

Secret Mode*

- ① Select Secret Mode field
- ② Select *Secret - On*

* Not available in USIM Card Phonebook

3 Press  (Save)**Tip****• Valid Phone Field Characters**

Enter 0-9, #, *, P (Pause), and + (International Code). Press  for 1+ seconds to enter P or press  for 1+ seconds to enter +.

• Saving an Entered Phone Number

During a call, *Menu* → *Add to Phonebook*

- ① In Standby, enter a phone number
- ② *Menu* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*
- ③ Select *New* or *Update* and select memory
- ④ Select a phone icon
- ⑤ Perform Steps 2 and 3

• Using Memory Card Files as Incoming Images/Tones

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy files to 805SC before setting. When setting copyrighted files, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 805SC before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

- **Synchronizing Phonebook with Samsung PC Studio**

Secret Mode entries cannot be synchronized or backed-up to a PC even if Secret Mode is active.

The entries with Secret Mode changed from *Secret - Off* to *Secret - On* cannot be synchronized and deleted immediately after the Secret Mode setting has been changed and tried synchronization.

For more information about Samsung PC Studio, see the User's guide in the attached CD-ROM.

Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use  to open a Call Log, highlight a record, select *Menu* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*

3 Select saving method

To create a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

- ① Select *Update*
- ② Open the Phonebook entry (➔P.5-10)

4 Select a phone icon

5 Add additional items as required

6 Press (Save)

Category Settings

Organize Phonebook entries among twenty Categories.

New Category (USIM Card)

- 1 Press  and select *Phonebook*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *View from USIM*
- 3 Press  (Search) and select *Category search*
- 4 Select *Menu* → *New category*
- 5 Enter a name
- 6 Press  (Save)

Edit Category

Customize Category names; add image/ringtones to appear/sound for incoming calls/messages from members.

- 1 Press  and select *Phonebook*
To select a USIM Card Category
After Step 1, select *Menu* → *View from USIM*
- 2 Press  (Search) and select *Category search*
- 3 Highlight category to change, select *Menu* → *Category settings*
- 4 Edit Category items
To change Category name
Select Category name field and enter a name
To set Category image
Select Category image field and select a file from Data Folder

To set incoming call ringtone

Select Call notice field then select a file from Data Folder

To set incoming S! Mail/SMS notice

Select Message notice field then select a ringtone

To restore Category defaults

Highlight item to restore and press  (Reset)

5 Press (Save)

Tip

- **Incoming Image & Ringtone Priority**

Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over those set for a Category.

- **Using Memory Card files as Incoming Images/ Ringtones**

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy files to 8055C before setting. When setting copyrighted files, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 8055C before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

- **When selecting USIM Card Category**

Only Category name can be edited.

Add Member

1 Press and select *Phonebook*

To select Category on USIM Card

After Step 1, select *Menu* → *View from USIM*

2 Press *Search* and select *Category search*

3 Select Category to which to add member

4 Select *Menu* → *Add member*

5 Check the member to add and press (Add)

Tip

- **To delete a member from a Category**

Deleting a member from a Category does not affect member's Phonebook entry.

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2 in "Add Member"
- ② Select Category from which to delete member
- ③ Select *Menu* → *Remove member*
- ④ Check member to delete and press  (Remove)

Using Phonebook

Calling from Phonebook

Phonebook Search

1 Press

If the correct search method appears first

Proceed to Step 2, Part ②

To change method in active search window

Press  and proceed to Step 2

2 Press (Search)

To search Phonebook list

- ① Select *Phonebook list*
- ② Use  to navigate Phonebook list

To search by Category

- ① Select *Category search*
- ② Select Category

To search by name

- ① Select *Name search*
- ② Enter any part of Name

To search by Reading

- ① Select *Reading search*
- ② Enter any part of Reading

To search by Entry Number

- ① Select *Entry No. search*
- ② Enter Entry Number

To search by Phone Number

- ① Select *Phone No. search*
- ② Enter any part of a phone number

To search by Mail Address

- ① Select *Email search*
- ② Enter any part of an mail address

3 Select an entry

To open Entry details

Press  (Details/Select)

Tip

- **To set Phonebook preference (Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook)**
 - ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Phonebook settings* → *View phonebook from*
 - ② Select *Phone memory* or *USIM memory*
- **When Secret Mode is set to *Hide***

Secret Phonebook entries do not appear. Activate Secret Mode to search Secret entries.

Initiating a Call

- 1 Select an entry, press  (Details) to view Details window



Entry Details

- 2 Select a number and initiate a call

To initiate a Voice Call

Press  (Call) or select *Menu* → *Voice call*

To initiate a Video Call

Select *Menu* → *Video call*

Tip

- **To place a call from Phonebook list**

Highlight an entry, select *Menu* → *Voice call* or *Video call*. When entry contains multiple numbers, Default Number is dialed if set; otherwise, first number listed is dialed. If Default Number is *Not assigned*, Call window appears; select a number.

Calling from Simple Search or search result

When *Simple search* is *On* (P.16-7), after entering a number, *Reading name* corresponding to the Entry Number appears. Highlight a phone number, press  or  (Select) →  (Call) to initiate a Voice Call; *Menu* → *Video call* for Video Call.

Calling from Phone No. search or search result

Enter 4-digit number to search and open entry name/phone number; this search for entries contains the entered number at the first/last part of the entry. When *Simple search* is *On* and an entry searched, press  to switch search result between Phone No. search and *Simple search*. Highlight a phone number, press  or  (Select) →  (Call) to initiate a Voice Call; select *Menu* → *Video call* to call a Video Call.

Calling USIM Card Phonebook Entries

Use Entry Numbers as shortcuts to call numbers saved in the first 100 USIM Card Phonebook entries.

1 Enter last two Entry Number digits

2 Press

If the correct entry is not highlighted

Use  to highlight it

3 Press (Call)

To initiate a Video Call

Press  (V-Call)

Changing Search Method

Default Setting ■ Phonebook list

Specify search window to appear first when  is pressed in Standby.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phonebook settings* → *Search type*

2 Select a setting

Tip

- **Search Method Items**

When selecting *Phonebook list*, press  in Standby to display a list. When selecting other settings, the selected search window appears.

Speed Dialing

Enter the last two Entry Number digits to call Voice Call Default Number in Phonebook entries 000 - 099.

1 Enter last two Entry Number digits

2 Press  ()

Tip

- **When *Simple search* is On (ⓄP.16-7)**

Enter Entry No. for names and phone numbers. After 5 seconds, search result disappears. When  appears, press  to dial.

Note

- **Speed Dialing is invalid for an entry if Voice Call Default Number (ⓄP.5-15) is set to *Not assigned*.**
- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide*, Secret Phonebook entries cannot be dialed.**

Phonebook Menu

Use the following Menu in Phonebook List or Entry details.

Item	Description
Add to ¹	Start the process of saving a new entry.
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (➔P.5-11).
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (➔P.5-11).
Create message	Open a new message addressed to the number saved as an entry (➔P.18-6).
Send	Send entry as a vFile; select <i>Via message</i> , to open a new message with entry attached (➔P.18-6), or <i>Via bluetooth</i> , to send entry to another device wirelessly (➔P.13-5).
Delete	Delete an entry (➔P.5-17).
Save to data folder	Create and save vFiles. Select <i>Phone</i> to save to Data Folder <i>Other documents</i> or <i>Memory card</i> to save to Memory Card.
Copy to USIM/ Copy to phone	(➔P.5-16)

Item	Description
View from USIM/ View from phone ¹	Toggle Phonebook and USIM Phonebook.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (➔P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Show or hide your number when making calls; Select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID setting.
Print via bluetooth	Print highlighted Entry details (name, phone number information) using the printer via Bluetooth® connection.
Service number	View service numbers saved on USIM Card.
Memory status ¹	Check memory usage.
Copy item ²	Copy highlighted entry item.
Mark default number ²	(➔P.5-15)

1 This item does not appear in Entry details.

2 This item does not appear in Phonebook list.

Editing Phonebook Entries

To search, list or Entry details, see "Phonebook Search" (P.5-10).

Activate Secret Mode to edit Secret Phonebook entries.

Edit

- 1 Open Entry details
- 2 Press  (Edit)
- 3 Edit entry items in the same way as adding entry items (P.5-4) and press  (Save)

Default Number

- Default Setting
- Voice call: First phone number
 - Video call: First phone number
 - Message: Not assigned

When an entry contains multiple phone numbers/mail addresses, set calling/messaging priorities by assigning to Default Number.

Resetting an item changes it to *Not assigned*.

- 1 Open Entry details
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Mark default number*
- 3 Set or reset options

To set

- ① Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *Message*
- ② Select a phone number or mail address

To reset

Highlight *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *Message* and press  (Reset)

4 Press  (Save)

Copy to USIM & Copy to Phone

Copying a Single Entry

1 Highlight an entry

To switch to Phone/USIM Card

Menu → *View from USIM* or *View from Phone*

2 Select *Menu* → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To copy an entry from Entry details

① After Step 1, press  (Details)

② *Menu* → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* →
Yes

Copying Multiple Entries at Once

1 Highlight an entry

To switch to Phone/USIM Card

Menu → *View from USIM* or *View from Phone*

2 Select *Menu* → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* → *Multiple*

3 Check entries to copy

4 Repeat Step 3 to check all target entries

5 Press (Copy)

When a confirmation message appears

Select *Yes*

Copying All Entries at Once

Copy all Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook entries.

1 Highlight an entry

To switch to Phone/USIM Card

Menu → *View from USIM* or *View from Phone*

2 Select *Menu* → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* → *All*

When a confirmation message appears

Select *Yes*

Deleting Entries

Deleting a Single Entry

1 Highlight an entry

2 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete an entry from Entry details

① After Step 1, press  (Details)

② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Yes*

Deleting Multiple Entries at Once

1 Highlight an entry

To select Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook

Menu → *View from Phone* or *View from USIM*

2 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

3 Check an entry to delete

4 Repeat Step 3 to check all target entries

5 Press  (Delete)

When all entries are checked

Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

6 Select *Yes*

Deleting All Entries at Once

Delete all Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook entries.

1 Highlight entries

To switch to Phone/USIM Card

Menu → *View from USIM* or *View from Phone*

2 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*

3 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) → *Yes*

My Phonebook Details

Confirm handset phone number. Add your name, mail address, street address, and other information.

1 Press  and Press 

To enter or edit other items

① Press  (Edit)

② Enter/edit items then press  (Save)

Menu

Item	Description
Send my phonebook details	Send as a vFile; select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with vFile attached ( P.18-6), or <i>Via bluetooth</i> to send vFile wirelessly ( P.13-5).
Delete	Delete entered owner information.
Save to data folder	Create and save vFiles. Select <i>Phone</i> to save to Data Folder <i>Other documents</i> or <i>Memory card</i> to save to Memory Card.
Copy item	Copy highlighted entry item.

Item	Description
Print via bluetooth	Print My phonebook details (name, phone number information) using printer via Bluetooth® connection.



Video Call

About Video Call	6-2
Initiating a Video Call	6-2
Receiving a Video Call	6-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	6-4
Engaged Video Call Menu.....	6-5
Video Call Settings	6-6
Sending Your Image.....	6-6
Selecting a Substitute Image	6-6
Retry Settings	6-7
Voice Mute.....	6-7

About Video Call

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

You may choose not to send your own image (➤P.6-6).

Video Call Precautions

- Video calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.
- It may be difficult to use Speaker Phone (➤P.6-5) with earpiece volume raised; lower volume or use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality; use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Initiating a Video Call

Call via Phonebook entries/Call Log records or dial directly.

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2 Confirm the phone number and select *Menu* → *Video call*
- 3 Press  to end the call

Tip

- Engaged Video Call Operations (➤P.6-4)

When Video Call cannot be connected

Unavailable for a video call... appears; select *Menu* → *Voice call* or *Create message* to contact the recipient, or *View contact details* to open Phonebook. Select *Add to Phonebook* to save the receiver's number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook.

Receiving a Video Call

1 When 805SC rings/vibrates, press



Loudspeaker on? appears

Select *Yes* or *No*

Allow own picture to be shown? appears

Select *Yes* or *No*

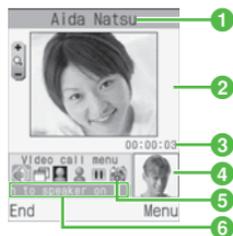
2 Press  to end the call

Tip

- **To adjust ringtone volume**
While 805SC is ringing, press  or .
- **When a Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**
Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer Video Calls. Press for 1+ seconds to end a Video Call.
- **To disconnect a Video Call without answering it**
Press  (Busy)
- **To change outgoing image**
Set 805SC to send Substitute Image beforehand (➔P.6-6). Alternatively, change to Substitute Image during a call (➔P.6-5).
- **To send Your Image or Substitute Image**
After Step 1, Your Image appears. When a confirmation appears, select *Yes* or *No* to send Your Image or Substitute Image. When Video Call connects Your Image or Substitute Image appears.
- **Engaged Video Call Operations (➔P.6-5)**

Engaged Video Call Operations

Perform operations using Video Call icons or *Menu*.



- 1 The other party's name or phone number
- 2 Large Display (Normally, the other party's image)
- 3 Call duration
- 4 Small Display (Normally, your image)
- 5 Video Call Menu Icons

 /  : Toggle Speaker Phone Off/On

 : Toggle Incoming Image Size

 /  : Freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

 (Blue) /  (Gray): Toggle Your Image and Substitute Image

 /  : Freeze or unfreeze incoming image

 : Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera

6 Description of the icon at cursor position

1 During Video Calls, select an icon or *Menu* to adjust settings

To toggle Speaker Phone off/on

Highlight  /  and press 

To select incoming image size

Highlight  and press  to select an item

To freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

Highlight  /  and press 

To toggle Your Image and Substitute Image

Highlight  (Blue/Gray) and press 

To freeze or unfreeze incoming image

Highlight  /  and press 

To toggle Internal and External Camera

Highlight  and press 

To cancel Your Image/mic/key tones

- ① Menu → Mute
- ② Check item(s) to cancel and press  (Save)

To adjust outgoing image appearance or incoming image quality

- ① Menu → Display options → Effects or Quality
- ② Highlight an item and press 

To adjust outgoing image brightness

- ① Menu → Display options → Brightness
- ② Use  to adjust brightness

Tip

- **To adjust earpiece volume**
Press  during a Video Call.
- **To enlarge or reduce outgoing image**
Press  or  during a Video Call.
- **When outgoing image is canceled**
805SC sends Substitute Image to the other party.

Engaged Video Call Menu

Item	Description
Normal/Speaker on	Toggle Speaker Phone off/on (➔P.6-4).
Mute	Cancel sending outgoing image/mic/key tones (➔P.6-5).
Display options	Adjust outgoing image appearance/quality/brightness (➔P.6-5).
Settings	Select Video Call settings (➔P.6-6).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Add to Phonebook	Save other party's phone number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.5-6).
Send DTMF	Press Keypad and  (send) to send push tones.
Memo	Create and save text memos (➔P.15-9).
Details	Open Phonebook Entry details.
Switch to headset/ Switch to phone	Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

Video Call Settings

Sending Your Image

Default Setting ■ Always ask

When *Always ask* is set, Choose between Your Image or Substitute Image as outgoing image each time a Video Call is received.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Show my picture*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Selecting a Substitute Image

Default Setting ■ Camera Off

Select an image to use as the outgoing image.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Select still picture*
- 2 Press  (Change)
- 3 Open Data Folder, select a file and press  (Save)

Tip

- To restore Substitute Image to its default
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Select any image file in Data Folder and select *Menu* → *Reset*

Retry Settings

Default Setting ■ Always ask

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Retry with*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- **Retry with Items**

Always ask : Select an action from *Menu*.

Voice call : Redial number as a Voice Call.

Messages : Create a message.

None : Return to Standby after a failed Video Call.
Automatic retry option changes by the setting.

Voice Mute

Default Setting ■ Off

Set *Voice mute* to *On* to answer Video Calls without sending sound to caller.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Voice mute*
- 2 Select *On* and press  (Save)

Tip

- **To send sound**

- ① During a Video Call, select *Menu* → *Mute*
- ② Uncheck *Voice*
- ③ Press  (Save)



Digital TV

About Digital TV	7-2	Additional Settings	7-11
Getting Started	7-2	Area Settings	7-11
Precautions	7-2	TV Settings.....	7-13
One Seg	7-3		
Antenna	7-4		
Incoming Transmissions	7-4		
Key Assignments.....	7-5		
TV Window	7-6		
Area Setup	7-7		
Watching TV	7-7		
Program Guide	7-8		
Program List	7-9		
Displaying Subtitle	7-9		
Control Panel.....	7-9		
Switching Window Mode	7-9		
Data Broadcast (Japanese).....	7-10		
TV Links	7-10		

About Digital TV

805SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts. One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this manual.

- Set up a channel list for the current service area or access programs via Program Guide.
- Use Data Broadcasts to get program-related information or to join the program through interactive services.

Watching Digital TV

In Standby, press  to activate TV. Set up a channel list for your service area to watch available TV programs (➡P.7-7).

Accessing Program Guide

Download an electronic program guide (➡P.7-8).

Watching Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (➡P.7-10).

Tip

- **Operations described in this section are described with 805SC Display in Portrait mode (➡P.7-6).**

Getting Started

Precautions

- 805SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1 2004.)
- Incoming transmissions may affect audio/visual signal. Use of another handset near 805SC may also affect TV.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone when viewing Digital TV.

Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
- Near railroad tracks or highways
- In underground shopping malls or tunnels
- Anywhere jamming signal is broadcast or reception is blocked

Battery

When battery level is , Digital TV is not available.

- If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.

- Use the supplied AC Charger.
- Keep AC Charger cord close away from Antenna; may cause interference.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

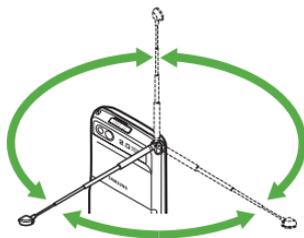
One Seg

One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and data broadcasts in Japan. The 6 MHz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.

- One Seg service began on April 1 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:
 - The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/> (PC)
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Mobile) Japanese

Antenna

- 805SC features a whip antenna that divides into four segments. Fully extend Antenna until fixed.
- After use, hold base of Antenna to retract it; pressing down on it with force may cause damage. Retract it and replace top bead into 805SC.
- Extend Antenna when viewing Digital TV, unless a broadcasting station is close. In this case, retract Antenna for better reception.
- For best reception, fold and rotate 360°.



Incoming Transmissions

Incoming Calls



Incoming call window appears. Press **●** to answer a call. The other party's phone number appears. End the call to return to Digital TV.

Tip

- **To set incoming notice mode while watching TV** (➔P.7-14)
- **To answer a call**
Perform Step 1 in "Receiving a Call" (➔P.2-3).
- **To reject an incoming call**
Perform Step 1 in "Reject Incoming Call" (➔P.2-5). After rejecting the call, TV window returns.

Incoming Messages

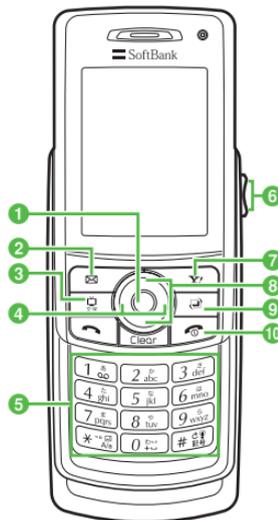


Vibrator is activated and after sender's mail address appears at the top of Display, Mail icon appears.

Tip

- **When returning to Standby**
The number of new and unread messages appears in an incoming notice window.
- **During Voice Call or when receiving new messages**
The quality of TV audio or visuals may be reduced. When bringing another mobile phone close to 805SC while watching TV, the audio or visual quality may also be reduced.

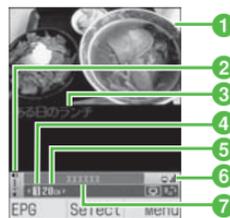
Key Assignments



	In Portrait Mode	In Landscape Mode
1	Execute Data Broadcast Item	-
2	Show Program Guide	-
3	Toggle View	Toggle View
4	Switch Channel	Show/Hide Subtitle (⊙)
		Show/Hide Control Panel (⊙)

	In Portrait Mode	In Landscape Mode
5	Enter Channel	Enter Channel
6	Adjust Volume	Adjust Volume
7	Open Menu	-
8	Select Data Broadcast Item	Change Channel
9	Open Switch Bar	Toggle Image Size
10	Exit TV	Exit TV

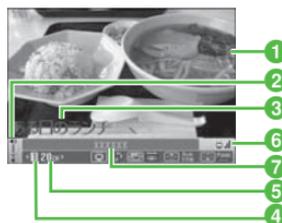
TV Window



With Subtitle



Without Subtitle



Landscape/With Subtitle



Landscape/No Subtitle
(Data Broadcast)

- 1 TV Image
- 2 Volume
- 3 Subtitle
- 4 Channel Key

- 5 Channel
- 6 Signal Strength
- 7 Station Name/
Program Name
- 8 Data Broadcast

Area Setup

8055C contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to set up channels.

- 1 Press 
- 2 When confirmation window appears, select *Yes*
- 3 Highlight a region and press  (Select)
- 4 Highlight a province and press  (Select)
- 5 Highlight a local area and press  (Select)
To cancel channel search
Press  (Cancel)
- 6 Press  (Save) and enter a name

Watching TV

- 1 Press 
- 2 Use Keypad to select a channel
To change a channel one by one
Press  or 
- 3 To exit TV, press  and select *Yes*

Tip

- To use other functions while watching TV
Use Switch Bar ( P.1-21).
- The setting in Default screen mode applies when activating TV ( P.7-14).
- To check Key operations while watching TV
In TV window, select *Menu* → *Help*. To return to TV window, press .
- To adjust volume while watching TV
Press Side Key  or . Press  for 2+ seconds to mute.

TV Menu

Selectable menu items vary by condition.

Item	Description
Full-screen display	Display TV image on landscape screen (☞P.7-9).
Program guide	Show Program Guide (☞P.7-8).
Program list	Check information on the channel being watched (☞P.7-9).
TV links	Save and view linked information on Data Broadcasting (☞P.7-10).
Display subtitle/hide subtitle	Show or hide Subtitle (☞P.7-9).
Change view (data)	Display Data Broadcasts (☞P.7-10).
Hide control panel/ Display control panel	Show or hide Control Panel (☞P.7-9).
Switch channel list	Set up or change Area info. (☞P.7-11).
Select/Edit channel	Select and switch a channel from Channel Info. or edit a channel (☞P.7-12).
Save channel	Add channel being watched (☞P.7-13).
Setting	Make TV settings (☞P.7-13).
Help	Check operating procedures.
Exit	Exit TV.

Tip

• To perform Menu operations

Menu operations are disabled in Landscape screen mode. Press  to change the screen mode.

Program Guide

1 In TV window, press  (EPG)

Tip

• Gガイドモバイル (G-GUIDE Mobile) (☞P.25-10)

• When Program Guide is activated for the first time

Initial setting window for "G-Guide Mobile" appears. Perform initial settings to access Program Guide.

Program List

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Program list*
- 2 Highlight information to check and press  (Select)

To return to TV window

Press  then 

Displaying Subtitle

Default Setting ■ Hide Subtitle

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Display subtitle*

Tip

- If subtitles are unavailable, nothing appears.
- Subtitle field appears even if subtitles do not.

Control Panel

Default Setting ■ Display control panel

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Hide control panel* or *Display control panel*

Switching Window Mode

- 1 In TV window, press 

To return to the previous mode

Press 

Tip

- In Landscape mode, press  to change Image size.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals, Data broadcasts are available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services.

Basic Operations

Follow onscreen instructions to view information.

- 1 Use  to highlight an item and press  (Select)

Tip

- Internet connection confirmation appears depending on Data Broadcast and station servers. Viewing Data Broadcasts (receiving information) is free. However, using data links or Internet-related services may incur connection fees.

Note

- Use  to highlight an item even when items are horizontally arranged. Use  to switch channels.

Changing View (Data)

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Change view (data)*

TV Links

Procedures to save links vary by program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

Saving TV Links

- 1 On a program offering Data Broadcast, select a link source

Opening TV Links

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *TV links*

Tip

- **To check details**

In TV links list, highlight a TV link and select *Menu* → *Details*.

Deleting a TV link

1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *TV links*

2 Highlight a TV link to delete, and select *Menu* → *Delete*

To delete a TV link

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple TV links

① Select *Multiple*

② Check channels to delete and press  (Delete)

To delete all TV links

Select *All* → *Yes*

Additional Settings

Area Settings

Switch areas or set other areas.

- Save up to 10 areas (Area 0 to 9).

Switching Area

1 While watching TV, select *Menu* → *Switch channel list*

2 Highlight an area and press  (Select)

3 Highlight a channel and press  (Select)

Tip

- **From Menu**

After Step 1, highlight *Not Stored* and select *Menu* → *Set Area Info*.

- **To change names in Channel List**

Select an item in Channel List and select *Menu* → *Rename*.

- **To check details**
Select an item in Channel List and select *Menu* → *Details*.
- **To restore default setting**
In Channel List, select *Menu* → *Reset*.

Updating Channels

- 1 In Channel List, highlight an item and press  (Select)
- 2 In TV window, Select *Menu* → *Set Channels* → *Update all* or *Update further*

Tip

- Select *Update all* to delete and update all channels in the Area.
- Select *Update further* to add new channels to current Area without changing saved channels. Channels assigned to the same keys are overwritten.

Changing Channel Numbers

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Select/Edit channel*
- 2 Highlight a channel and select *Menu* → *Move*
- 3 Highlight the destination field and press 

Deleting Channels

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Select/Edit channel*
- 2 Highlight a channel and select *Menu* → *Delete*
- 3 Perform operations for deleting channels

To delete one channel

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To select and delete multiple channels

- 1 Select *Multiple*
- 2 Check channels to delete and press  (Delete)

To delete all channels

- 1 Select *All* → *Yes*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tip

- To check/uncheck all channels at once
In Step 3, press  (Mark all/Unmark all).

Saving Channels to Channel List

- 1 While watching a program, select *Menu* → *Save channel*
- 2 Highlight a destination to save to and press  (Select)

TV Settings

Backlight

Default Setting ■ On

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Display* → *Backlight*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)

Brightness

Default Setting ■ Level 3

- 1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Display* → *Brightness*
- 2 Use  to adjust brightness

Sound Output

Default Setting ■ Loud speaker

1 In TV window, select *Menu* →
Settings → *Sound output*

2 Select *Loud speaker* or *Earphone*

Default Screen Mode

Default Setting ■ Landscape

Select the window mode when activating TV from
Landscape or *Portrait*.

1 In TV window, select *Settings* →
Default screen mode

2 Select an item and press  (Select)

Sound Language

Default Setting ■ Main

Select the sound language from *Main*, *Sub* or
Main+Sub.

1 In TV window, select *Settings* →
Sound language

2 Select an item and press  (Select)

Incoming Calls & Alarms

Default Setting ■ Incoming call: Call priority
■ Alarms: Alarm priority

Select the incoming mode when receiving a call while
watching TV.

1 In TV window, select *Menu* →
Settings → *Calls & Alarms*

2 Select *Incoming calls* or *Alarms*

When selecting *Incoming calls*

Select *Voice call* or *Video call*

3 Select an item and perform operations to set

To set *Voice call* or *Video call*

Select *Call priority* or *Notice a call*

To set *Alarms*

Select *Alarm priority* or *Alarm notice*

Tip

- **When *Call priority/Alarm priority* is set**

TV is automatically paused and an incoming call window or alarm window appears.

- **When *Notice a call/Alarm notice* is set**

In TV window, the notice for incoming calls or alarms appears at the top of Display and 8055C vibrates. Press  to answer a call. Press  to reject a call. Press  to end Alarm.

Broadcast Data

1 In TV window, select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Broadcast data*

2 Select an item and perform operations to set

To set connection notification

① Select *Notify connection*

② Select *On* or *Off*

To set manufacturer number

① Select *Manufacture number*

② Select *On* or *Off*

To delete all station data

① Select *Delete station data*

② Select *Menu* → *Delete all*

To delete all station data items

- ① Select *Delete station data*
- ② Highlight a station and select *Menu* → *Delete*
Alternatively, highlight a station, press  (Select) and select *Menu* → *Delete all*.

To delete a station data item

- ① Select *Delete station data*
- ② Highlight a station and press  (Select)
- ③ Highlight an item to delete and press  (Select)

Mobile Camera

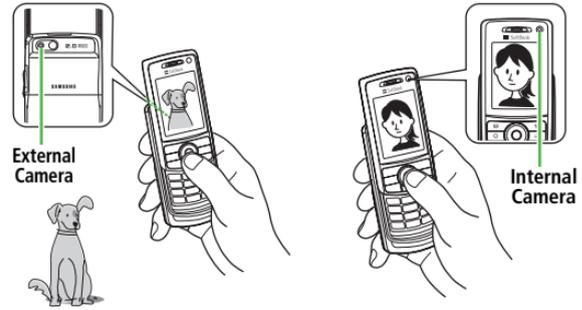
About Mobile Camera	8-2	Create Flash[®]	8-20
Mobile Camera Precautions	8-2	Attaching Images	8-22
Using Display as Viewfinder	8-2		
Capturing a Still Image	8-4		
Camera Mode.....	8-4		
Capturing Still Images.....	8-4		
Capturing Video	8-11		
Video Mode.....	8-11		
Recording Video	8-11		
Mobile Camera Settings	8-13		
Camera Settings	8-13		
Video Settings	8-15		
Viewing Images	8-16		
Viewing Still Images.....	8-16		
Viewing Videos.....	8-16		
Editing Still Images	8-16		
Editing Video	8-18		

About Mobile Camera

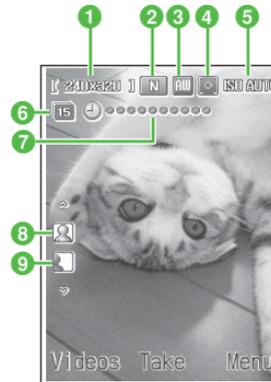
Capture still images in JPEG or video in 3GP format.

Mobile Camera Precautions

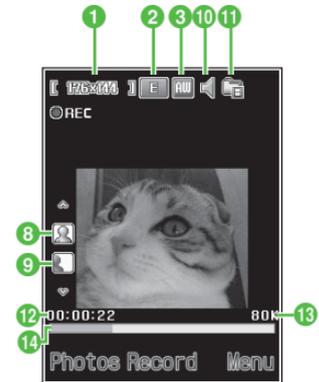
- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 805SC steady or place it on a stable surface and use Timer.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 805SC in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.
- The quality of images captured with *Panorama shot* may be lower than those captured with other modes.



Using Display as Viewfinder



Camera Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

1 Size

Still Image : [1600x1200], [1280x960], [640x480],
[320x240], [240x320], [240x192]

Video : [320x240], [176x144], [128x96]

2 Quality

 : Superfine  : Fine
 : Normal  : Low
 : Economy

3 White Balance

 : Auto  : Fine  : Cloudy
 : Incandescent  : Fluorescent

4 Spot Metering

 : Off  : On

5 ISO

ISO AUTO : Auto ISO 100 : 100
ISO 200 : 200 ISO 400 : 400

6 Mode

No display : Single shot

 : Multi-shot (6 shots)  : Multi-shot (9 shots)
 : Multi-shot (15 shots)

7 Timer (When set)

 : 3 seconds
 : 5 seconds
 : 10 seconds

8 Image Orientation (Portrait)

 : Upright Image
 : Downward Image

9 Image Orientation (Landscape)

 : Normal Image
 : Mirror Image

10 Audio Recording

 : On  : Off

11 Recording Time

 : Limit for S! Mail  : 10 seconds
 : 30 seconds  : Normal recording

12 Elapsed Recording Time**13 Total Data Size/Recording Time****14 Progress Bar**

Capturing a Still Image

Camera Mode

Select *Single shot* to capture single images, *Multi-shot* or *Mosaic shot* to capture multiple images. Save images in Pictures. Select *Panorama Shot* to capture images as panorama.

Mode	Description	Image size
Single shot	Capture single images, select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.	1600 x 1200 1280 x 960 640 x 480 320 x 240 240 x 320 240 x 192
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture 6, 9 or 15 sequential images.	320 x 240
Mosaic shot	Capture multiple images at a time; select <i>Frame</i> to automatically combine single images into one composite image.	240 x 192

Mode	Description	Image size
Panorama Shot	Capture images as panorama.	240 x 320*

* Image size up to 240 x 1824 (portrait), or 1824 x 320 (landscape)

Tip

- **When using Single shot mode with a flame**
Image size is automatically adjusted to 240 x 192.

Capturing Still Images

Single Shot

1 Press  for 2+ seconds

In Video mode

Press  (Photos) to change to Camera mode

2 Select *Menu* and perform other actions as required (⊙P.8-5)

3 Use Display as viewfinder

Zoom in/out (Except 1600 x 1200 External Camera and 640 x 480 Internal Camera)

Use  or  to enlarge or reduce image

Brightness

Use  or  to lighten or darken image

4 Press (Take)

To retake an image

Press 

5 Press (Save)

Tip

- **To activate/adjust Timer in image preview**
Before Step 4, press  to toggle 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, and Off.
- **To toggle Internal Camera and External Camera**
In image preview, select *Menu* → *Switch camera*.

- **To adjust image preview**

Press  to toggle *Full screen*, *Full screen without indicator*, *Full screen with grid*, and *Actual ratio*.

- **To send an image via S! Mail or Bluetooth®**

- ① After Step 4, press  (Send) and select an item
- ② Send image ( P.13-5, 18-6)

Preview Menu

Available menu items may vary by mode and settings.

Item	Description
Switch camera	Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera ( P.8-5).
Shooting mode	Set <i>Single shot</i> , <i>Panorama Shot</i> , image count for <i>Multi-shot</i> or <i>Mosaic shot</i> ( P.8-4, 8-8, 8-9).
Effects	Select <i>Black & White</i> , <i>Sepia</i> or <i>Negative</i> effects filters. When an effect is active, select <i>None</i> to cancel.
Frames	Add a frame to image in <i>Single shot</i> mode.
Timer	Activate self-timer ( P.8-5).
Go to photos	Open <i>Pictures</i> folder.

Item	Description
Camera settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (➔P.8-13).
Camera shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (➔P.8-10).

Review Menu

Item	Description
Save	Save captured images.
Set as	Set image for Wallpaper, Phonebook entries, or Substitute Image.
Edit photo	Edit an image in Pictures folder (➔P.8-16).
Dynamic Effect	Create Flash [®] images using Still images (➔P.8-20).
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (➔P.8-6).
Go to photos	Open Pictures folder.

Mobile Postcard

This function renders one of two images as line art, merging it with the other to create a stamped photograph.

- 1 Capture an image (➔P.8-4, 8-8)
- 2 Select *Menu* → *mPostcard*
- 3 Press  (Add)
- 4 Add a second image

To select a still image from Data Folder

- ① Select *Open*
- ② Open Data Folder and select an image file

To capture an image

- ① Select *Take photo*
- ② Press  (Take)
- ③ Press  (Add)

5 Press (Merge) and check result

To change image

- 1 Press 
- 2 Highlight image to change, select *Menu* → *Change image*
- 3 Repeat Steps 4 and 5

To swap image positions

- 1 Press 
- 2 *Menu* → *Swap image*
- 3 Perform Step 5

6 To edit line art, press (Edit)

To change line art position

- 1 *Menu* → *Move*
- 2 Use  to move image and press  (Done)

To change line art size

- 1 *Menu* → *Size*
- 2 Use  to adjust image and press  (Done)

To rotate line art

- 1 *Menu* → *Rotate*
- 2 Use  to rotate image and press  (Done)

To change line art color

- 1 *Menu* → *Change colour*
- 2 Use  to select color and press  (Done)

To adjust line art shadow

- 1 *Menu* → *Shadow on* or *Shadow off*
- 2 Press  (Done)

7 Press (Save) and enter a file name

To save and send image

- 1 Press  (S & S)
- 2 Select an item and send (➔P.13-5, 18-6)

Multi Shot

- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds
In Video mode
Press  (Photos) to change Camera mode
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Shooting mode* → *Multi-shot* and select the number of images to capture
- 3 Select *Menu* and perform other actions as required (⇨P.8-5)
- 4 Preview shooting object on Display
Zoom in/out
Use  or  to enlarge or reduce image
Brightness
Use  or  to lighten or darken image
- 5 Press  (Take)

To view still images individually

- ① Highlight the image and press  (View)
- ② Use  or  to go to next/previous image
- ③ Press 

To retake still images

Press 

- 6 Press  (Save)

Mosaic Shot

- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds
In Video mode
Press  (Photos) to change Camera mode
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Shooting mode* → *Mosaic shot* to select Frame
- 3 Select *Menu* and perform other actions as required (⇨P.8-5)
- 4 Preview shooting object on Display

Zoom in/out

Use  or  to enlarge or reduce image

Brightness

Use  or  to brighten or darken image

5 Press (Take) for each frame

To retake still images

Press 

6 Press (Save)

Panorama Shot

1 Press for 2+ seconds

In Video mode

Press  (Photos) to change Camera mode

2 Select *Menu* → *Shooting mode* → *Panorama Shot*

3 Select *Menu* and perform other actions as required (⇨P.8-5)

4 Use Display as viewfinder

Zoom in/out

Use  or  to enlarge or reduce image

Brightness

Use  or  to brighten or darken image

5 Press (Take) and pan 805SC

6 Press (Stop) to end capturing

When capture area is full

Capturing ends automatically

To retake image

Press 

7 Press (Save)

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to change item settings.

Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
	Size	1600 x 1200, 1280 x 960, 640 x 480, 320 x 240, 240 x 320, 240 x 192
	Quality	Superfine, Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi-shot 6, Multi- shot 9, Multi-shot 15, Mosaic shot, Panorama Shot
	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
	Frames	Select from 9 types
	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
	ISO	Auto, 100, 200, 400
	Spot metering	Off, On
	Photo album	-
	Screen mode	Toggle Normal screen, no indicator, with grid

Key	Item	Description
	Mode switch	-
	Vertical inverse	-
	Horizontal inverse	-
	Zoom	-
	Brightness	-

Capturing Video

Video Mode

Capture clips easily. Alternatively, capture clips without sound. Files are saved in 3GP format to Videos folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach to/insert into an S! Mail, select *Recording time* → *Limit for S! Mail* (⇒P.8-15).

Recording Video

1 Press  for 2+ seconds

In Camera mode

Press  (Videos) to open Video mode

2 Select *Menu* and perform other actions as required (⇒P.8-12)

3 Use Display as viewfinder

Zoom in/out

Use  or  to enlarge or reduce image

Brightness

Use  or  to lighten or darken image

4 Press  (Record)

5 Press  (Stop) to end recording

After recording time elapses

Recording ends automatically

6 Select *Save*

To preview saved clip

Select *Preview*

To send saved clip by email

Select *Send to Message*

To send saved clip via Bluetooth®

Select *Send to bluetooth*

Tip

- **To activate/adjust Timer**

Before Step 4, press  to toggle *3 seconds*, *5 seconds*, *10 seconds*, *Off*.

- **To toggle Internal Camera and External Camera**

Before Step 4, select *Menu* → *Switch camera*.

Preview Menu

Item	Description
Switch camera	Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera (➔P.8-12).
Effects	Select <i>Black & White</i> , <i>Sepia</i> , or <i>Negative</i> effects filters. When an effect is active, select <i>None</i> to cancel.
Timer	Activate self-timer (➔P.8-12).
Go to videos	Open Videos folder.
Video settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (➔P.8-15).
Camcorder shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (➔P.8-12).

Review Menu

Perform operations in a preview window after capturing.

Item	Description
Resolution	Select video display size while playing or paused.

Shortcut Key Operations

Change settings by pressing key assigned to each item.

Key	Item	Description
	Size	320 x 240, 176 x 144, 128 x 96
	Quality	Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
	Shooting time	Limit for S! Mail, 10 seconds, 30 seconds, Normal recording
	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
	Audio recording	On, Off
	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
	Record album	-

Key	Item	Description
	Mode switch	-
	Vertical inverse	-
	Horizontal inverse	-
	Zoom	-
	Brightness	-

Mobile Camera Settings

Adjust image capture settings, including image size, image quality and save location, etc.

Camera Settings

- Default Setting**
- Size: 240 x 320
 - Quality: Normal
 - Viewfinder: Full screen without indicator
 - Shutter sound: Shutter 1
 - Multi-shot speed: High
 - Automatic save: Off
 - White balance: Auto
 - ISO: Auto
 - Spot metering: Off
 - Scene program: Normal
 - Default storage: Phone
 - Default name: Photo

1 Press  for 2+ seconds

In Video mode

Press  (Photos) to change to Camera mode

2 Select *Menu* → *Camera settings*

3 Set items

Image size

- ① Select *Size*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Image quality

- ① Select *Quality*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Viewfinder

- ① Select *Viewfinder*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Shutter sound

- ① Select *Shutter sound*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Sequential shot speed

- ① Select *Multi-shot speed*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Automatic save

- ① Select *Automatic save*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

White balance

- ① Select *White balance*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

ISO

- ① Select *ISO*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Spot metering

- ① Select *Spot metering*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Scene program

- ① Select *Scene program*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

Save location (Phone/Memory Card)

- ① Select *Default storage*
- ② Select a setting and press (Save)

File name

- ① Select *Default name*
- ② Enter file name

Tip

• **Default storage setting**

Changing the setting here applies to *Default storage* in Video settings.

Video Settings

Default Setting

- Recording time: Limit for S! Mail
- Size: 176 x 144
- Quality: Economy ■ Audio recording: On
- Default storage: Phone
- Default name: Video

1 Press for 2+ seconds

In Camera mode

Press  (Videos) to change to Video mode

2 Select *Menu* → *Video settings*

3 Set items

Duration

- ① Select *Recording time*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Size

- ① Select *Size*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Image quality

- ① Select *Quality*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Voice recording

- ① Select *Audio recording*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Save location (Phone/Memory Card)

- ① Select *Default storage*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

File name

- ① Select *Default name*
- ② Enter file name

Tip

- **Video recording time**

For *Normal recording*, record up to one hour of video.

- **When *Recording time* is set to *Limit for S! Mail***

Size *320 x 240* is not selectable and Quality is *Economy*.

- ***Default storage setting***

Changing the setting here applies to *Default storage* in Camera settings.

Viewing Images

View images/video clips saved in Data Folder.

Viewing Still Images

- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds

In Video mode

Press  (Photos) to change Camera mode

- 2 Select *Menu* → *Go to photos*

- 3 Highlight a file and press  (View)

Viewing Videos

- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds

In Camera mode

Press  (Videos) to change to Video mode

- 2 Select *Menu* → *Go to videos*

- 3 Highlight and select a file and press  (Play)

Editing Still Images

Edit image files saved in Data Folder.

- 1 Press , select *Data Folder* and select an image to edit

- 2 Highlight a file and press  (View)

- 3 Select *Menu* → *Edit*

- 4 Edit using *Menu*

To change the size of an image

- ① Select *Resize*
- ② Select the setting
- ③ Enter *Width* or *Height* (If *Customise* is selected)
- ④ Press  (Done)

To add effects to an image

- ① Select *Effects*
- ② Select the setting
- ③ Press  (Done)

To add blur or correct red-eye

- ① Select *Partial effects* → *Partial blur* or *Redeye repair*
- ② *Menu* and select the suitable operation
- ③ Press  (Done)

To adjust an image

- ① Select *Adjust* → *Brightness/Contrast/Colour*
- ② Adjust the image
- ③ Press  (Done)

To add a frame

- ① Select *Frames*
- ② Use  to select a frame
- ③ Press  (Done)

To add clip art to an image

- ① Select *Cliparts*
- ② Select a piece of clip art to add to an image
- ③ *Menu* → *Size* and use  to adjust clip art size
- ④ *Menu* → *Rotate* and use  to turn clip art
- ⑤ *Menu* → *Move* and use  to move clip art
- ⑥ Press  (Done)

To add text to image (320 x 240 or above)

- ① Select *Insert text*
- ② Enter text
- ③ *Menu* → *Size* and use  to adjust text size
- ④ *Menu* → *Rotate* and use  to turn text
- ⑤ *Menu* → *Font size* → *Large/Normal/Small*
- ⑥ *Menu* → *Colour* and use  to adjust text color
- ⑦ Press  (Done)

To rotate image

- ① Select *Rotate*
- ② Select $90^\circ R$ or $90^\circ L$
- ③ Press  (Done)

To flip image

- ① Select *Flip*
- ② Select *Vertically* or *Horizontally*
- ③ Press  (Done)

To crop image

- ① Select *Crop*
- ② *Menu* → *Size* and use  to adjust trimming size
- ③ *Menu* → *Shape* and use  to select trimming shape
- ④ *Menu* → *Move* and use  to adjust trimming position
- ⑤ *Menu* → *Crop*
- ⑥ Press  (Done)

5 Press  (**Save**)

6 Enter an image name

Editing Video

Edit Video files in Data Folder.

1 Press , and select *Data Folder* → *Videos*

2 Highlight a file, and select *Menu* → *Edit*

3 Edit using *Menu*

To cut video

- ① Select *Cut*
- ② Press  (Play)
- ③ Press  (Start) at the start point
- ④ Press  (End) at the End point
- ⑤ To cancel and retry, press  (Reset) and repeat steps ② to ④
- ⑥ Press  (Done)

To merge multiple videos

- ① Select *Merge*
- ② Check files to merge (Up to 9 files)
- ③ Press  (Memory) for Memory Card files
- ④ Repeat steps ② and ③ to check all target files
- ⑤ Press  (Done)
- ⑥ Press  (Merge)

To replace sound from other video/sound

- ① Select *Replace sound* → *From other video* or *From other sound*
- ② Press  (Select)
- ③ Select a file and press  (Done)

To erase sound

- ① Select *Audio Erase*
- ② Press  (Erase)

To erase image

- ① Select *Video Erase*
- ② Press  (Erase)

To play back in slow motion

- ① Select *Slow Motion* → *1/2X*, *1/3X*, or *1/4X*
- ② Press  (Execute)

To play back in fast motion

- ① Select *Fast Motion* → *2X*, *3X*, or *4X*
- ② Press  (Execute)

4 Press (Save)

5 Enter a file name

Tip

• To confirm video before or after editing

- ① Press  (Preview)
- ② Press  (Play)
- ③ Press  to return to the editing window

• To add files to merge videos

- ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," select *Menu* → *Add*
- ② Perform steps ② to ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos"

- **To delete the file order for merging**

- ① After step ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use  to highlight the file to delete
- ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Yes*

- **To change the file order for merging**

- ① After step ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use  to highlight the file to move
- ② *Menu* → *Change order*
- ③ Use  to highlight a personal folder or a file, highlight the file and press 

Create Flash[®]

Create Flash[®] images using still images saved in Pictures folder or still images previewed immediately after shooting; newly created Flash[®] images are saved to Other documents folder in Data Folder.

1 Press  and *Camera* → *Dynamic effect list*

2 Select a file

3 Perform creation operations

To add frame to image

- ① Select  (Frame)
- ② Select a frame

To add icon to image

- ① Select  (Icon)
- ② Select an icon
- ③ Select *Menu* → *Size*, use  to adjust size and press  (Done)
- ④ Select *Menu* → *Rotate* and use  to adjust angle and press  (Done)
- ⑤ Select *Menu* → *Reverse*, use  to adjust orientation and press  (Done)
- ⑥ Select *Menu* → *Transparency*, use  to adjust transparency and press  (Done)
- ⑦ Use  to adjust position and  (Done)
- ⑧ Repeat steps ① to ⑦ to add more icons

To add self-made balloon

- ① Select  (Balloon)
- ② Select *Normal*
- ③ Select a balloon
- ④ Enter text
- ⑤ Select *Menu* → *Font size*, use  to adjust the size and press  (Done)
- ⑥ Select *Menu* → *Font color*, use  to adjust the text color and press  (Done)
- ⑦ Select *Menu* → *Action text*, use  to select an action for text and press  (Done)
- ⑧ Select *Menu* → *Reverse*, use  to adjust orientation and press  (Done)
- ⑨ Select *Menu* → *Change text*, and edit text
- ⑩ Use  to adjust position and  (Done)
- ⑪ Select  (Balloon), press  (Insert) and repeat steps ② to ⑨ to add more icons

To add pre-installed balloon

- ① Select  (Balloon)
- ② Select *Ready-made*
- ③ Select a balloon
- ④ Use  to adjust position and  (Done)
- ⑤ Select  (Balloon), press  (Insert) and repeat steps ② to ④ to add more icons

To add watch on image

- ① Select  (Watch)
- ② Select the watch
- ③ Press  (Done)

To reset image during editing

- ① Select  (Reset)
- ② Select *Yes*

4 Press  (Save)

5 Enter an image name

Tip

- **To delete added frame/watch**

- ① After Step 2, select  (Frame) or  (Watch)
- ② Press  (Delete)

- **To delete added icon(s)/balloon(s)**

- ① After Step 2, select  (Icon) or  (Balloon)
- ② Use  to highlight more icons/text to delete
- ③ Press  (Delete)
- ④ Press  (Done)

- **Available icon/balloon to add**

Up to 5 icons/3 balloons can be added.

- **To create Flash[®] images using Data Folder images**

- ① Highlight image saved in Data Folder and select *Menu*
→ *Dynamic Effect*
- ② Perform Steps 3 to 5 (➔P.8-20 to 8-21) in "Create Flash[®]"

Attaching Images

Attach captured image or recorded video to S! Mail.

However, in case of videos, only videos recorded with

Limit for S! Mail (➔P.8-15) can be attached.

1 After capturing, press (Send) → *Via message*

To send video

In Menu window appeared after recording, select

Send to Message

2 Enter an address, subject, text, etc., and send

Tip

- **To send a still image or video via Bluetooth[®]**

To send a still image, select *Via bluetooth* in Step 1. To send video, select *Send to bluetooth* in Step 1 (➔P.13-5).

Display Settings

Standby Display Settings	9-2
Wallpaper.....	9-2
Clock Display.....	9-4
Operator Name.....	9-5
Menu Display	9-5
Menu Style.....	9-5
Popup Menu.....	9-5
Font	9-6
Font Type.....	9-6
Font Size.....	9-6
Backlight Brightness & Duration	9-7
Adjusting Display Brightness	9-7
Backlight Duration	9-7
Dialing Display	9-7
Display Language	9-8

Standby Display Settings

Wallpaper

Default Setting ■ Pictures

Set an image, animation or Slide Show to appear in Standby; hide image.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*

2 Set items

To change settings

Select *Pictures*, *Slide show* or *None*

To change the image

- ① Select *Pictures*
- ② Select a folder then a file
- ③ Press  (Set)

To set/edit the image of Slide show

- ① Select *Slide show*
- ② Perform Steps 2 to 4 in "Setting Slide Show" (☞P.9-2) or perform Steps 2 and 3 in "Editing Slide Show" (☞P.9-3)

Setting Slide Show

1 Press  and select *Camera* → *Slide show*

2 Press  (Add)

3 Select a folder, check an image and press  (Done)

To see preview

- ① Press  (Preview) and select *Yes* (cropped image) or *No* (original image)
- ② Press  to close the preview

To set effect

- ① Use  to highlight Effect field
- ② Use  to toggle setting

To change the slide interval

- ① Use  to highlight Duration field
- ② Use  to highlight Effect field

4 Press (Set) and select *Yes* (crop sides) or *No* (show full image)

Tip

- **To adjust slide size**

For a larger image, select *Yes* in Step 4. For the original image, select *No*.

Editing Slide Show

1 Press and select *Camera* → *Slide show*

2 Edit Slide images

To edit still images

- ① *Menu* → *Replace*
- ② Check a still image to set and press  (Done)

To change image order

- ① Highlight images to change and select *Menu* → *Change Order*
- ② Use  to change order and press  (Save)

To delete a still image

Highlight image to delete, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Yes*

To add a still image

- ① Highlight an empty slide and press  (Add)
- ② Check image to add and press  (Done)

3 Press (Set) and select *Yes* or *No*

Tip

- **To adjust slide size**

For a larger image, select *Yes* in Step 3. For the original image, select *No*.

Clock Display

Default Setting ■ Off

Set Digital clock, Dual clock, Calendar or Today's event to appear in Standby. Alternatively, hide clock in Standby.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Clock display*

2 Select settings

To set Digital clock

- ① Select *Digital clock*
- ② Press  (Edit) and use  to select clock type
- ③ Press 

To set Dual clock

- ① Select *Dual clock*
- ② Press  (Edit)
- ③ Perform Step 3 in "Changing Home Time Zone" (➡P.1-19)

To display Calendar

Select *Calendar*

To display Today's event

Select *Today's event*

To hide clock

Select *Off*

3 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **When *Dual clock* is set**

Two clocks appear in Standby. Top time is that of the zone selected in "Time & Date" (➡P.1-18) and bottom time is that of the zone set in Dual clock (➡P.9-4).

Operator Name

Default Setting ■ Off

In Standby, show or hide operator name.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Operator name*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Menu Display

Menu Style

Default Setting ■ White

Change menu appearance.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Main menu style*
- 2 Highlight an item and press  (Save)

Popup Menu

Default Setting ■ Off

When active, sub menus appear in a popup window when a menu item is highlighted.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Popup menu*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- When an item with no sub menu is highlighted Nothing appears. Popup menus do not appear in Alarms.

Font

Font Type

Default Setting ■ Font1

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Font*
- 2 Select *Font type*
- 3 Select *Font1* or *Font2*
- 4 Press  (Save)

Font Size

Default Setting ■ List font: Large
 ■ Browser: Standard
 ■ Phonebook: Standard

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Font*
- 2 Select *Font size*
- 3 Select an item
 - List font**
Select *List font* and select *Large* or *Small*
 - Browser**
Select *Browser* and select *Large*, *Standard* or *Small*
 - Phonebook**
Select *Phonebook* and select *Large*, *Standard* or *Small*
- 4 Press  (Save)

Backlight Brightness & Duration

Adjusting Display Brightness

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Brightness*
- 2 Use  to adjust brightness and press  (Save)

Backlight Duration

Default Setting ■ On: 15 seconds ■ Dim: 5 seconds

Set backlight time. Display becomes dimmer when time set in *On* elapses and turns off when time set in *Dim* has elapsed.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Backlight time*

2 Set items

To set the time to light up

- ① Select On field
- ② Select the time to set and press 

To set the time till Display goes off

- ① Select Dim field
- ② Select the time to set and press 

3 Press (Save)

Dialing Display

Default Setting ■ Font type: Normal

Appears when dialing in Standby. When character type is set to Normal or Serif, select font size, color and background color.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Dialling display*

2 Set items

Font type

- ① Select *Font type*
- ② Use  to switch font type

Font size

- ① Select *Font size*
- ② Use  to select the size

Font color

- ① Select *Font colour*
- ② Use  to select the setting
- ③ Use  to move cursor to Color selection field and use  to select a color (For *Monochrome* only)

Background color

- ① Select *Background colour*
- ② Use  to select the color

3 Press (Save)

Display Language

Default Setting ■ 日本語 (Japanese)

Set 805SC user interface to appear in English, Japanese, or Korean.

- 1 Press  and select 設定 → 一般設定
→ *Language* or 言語選択
- 2 Select *English* and press  (保存/
Save/저장)

Sound Settings

Changing Profile Settings 10-2

Changing Profile Settings

Change 805SC incoming transmission response by profile.

In Car Profile, select Call answer mode.

1 In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds

2 Highlight a profile and press

 (Edit)

To set Ringtone volume

- 1 Select *Ringtone volume* and select item to set
- 2 Use  to adjust volume
- 3 Press  (Play) to confirm volume and press  (Save)

To set sound effect or key tone volume

- 1 Select *Ringtone volume* and select *key tones*
- 2 Use  to adjust volume and press  (Save)

To set Voice/Video Call ringtone

- 1 Select *Ringtone* and select *Voice call ringtone* or *Video call ringtone*
- 2 Select the save location for files
- 3 Highlight a melody, press  (Play) to confirm melody and press  (Select)

To set S! Mail/SMS ringtone

- 1 Select *Ringtone* and select *Message ringtone*
- 2 Select setting, press  (Play) to confirm ringtone and press  (Save)

To set vibration

- 1 Select *Vibration* and select an item
- 2 Select setting and press  (Save)

To set S! Mail/SMS ring duration

- 1 Select *Message ringtone duration*
- 2 Enter duration and press  (Save)

To set Phone sounds

- 1 Select *Phone sounds*
- 2 Check items to set and press  (Save)

To set key tone

- ① Select *Key tones*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

To set Car Profile answering method

- ① Select *Call answer mode*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- **Ringtone volume**

Select  for step-up ringer.

- **Ringer Reducer**

Reduces ringer volume to Level 1 for the first two seconds.

- **Car Profile Call answer mode**

If *Anykey* is set, press any key except , , , or Side Key  or .

- **To set Car Profile auto answer time**

After step ① in "To set Car Profile answering method" in Step 2, select *Automatic* and press  (Edit); edit answer time and press .

- **To set Voice recorder recording as ringtone**

After step ② in "To set ringtone" in Step 2, select *amr* file.

- **To adjust the volume while 8055C rings**

Press Side Key  or  while 8055C rings.

- **To turn ringer and vibration off**

Mute *Ringtone volume* and set *Vibration Off*; mute indicator () appears.

- **To change ringtone title for S! Mail/SMS**

- ① After step ② in "To set S! Mail/SMS ringtone" in Step 2, highlight *Data Folder* and press  (Select)
- ② Select save location for a file
- ③ Highlight a file and press  (Play)
- ④ Press  (Select)

- **To adjust key tone volume**

In Standby, press Side Key  or .

Sound settings

Change Normal Profile sound settings here. Settings for other profiles cannot be changed.

Profile settings

Available items vary by Profile. Defaults are as listed below.

Item \ Profile	Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor
Ringtone volume					
Voice call ringtone	Level 4	N/A	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Video call ringtone	Level 4	N/A	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Message ringtone	Level 4	N/A	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Key tones	Level 2	N/A	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Ringtone					
Voice call ringtone	Tripping.mmf	N/A	Tripping.mmf	Tripping.mmf	Tripping.mmf
Video call ringtone	Secret Life.mmf	N/A	Secret Life.mmf	Secret Life.mmf	Secret Life.mmf
Message ringtone	Pure	N/A	Pure	Pure	Pure
Vibration					
Voice call	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Video call	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Message	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1

Item \ Profile	Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor
Message ringtone duration	5 Seconds	N/A	5 Seconds	5 Seconds	5 Seconds
Phone sounds	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On
Key tones	Xylophone	N/A	Xylophone	Xylophone	Xylophone
Call answer mode	N/A	N/A	Normal	N/A	N/A
Answer machine	N/A	On	N/A	N/A	N/A

Phone Sounds

Available items vary by Profile. Volume Level set in Key Tone
Volume applies to all Phone Sounds.

Item	Description
All	Check/uncheck all items.
Popup box alerts	Sounds for confirmations/warnings.
Minute minder	Sounds about once a minute during calls.
Call connect tone	Sounds when calls connect before called phone rings.
Call end tone	Sounds when a call ends.
Power on	Sounds when power is turn on.
Power off	Sounds when power is turn off.
Slide up/down	Sounds when 805SC is slid up/down.
Alerts on call	Sounds for alarms/incoming transmissions.

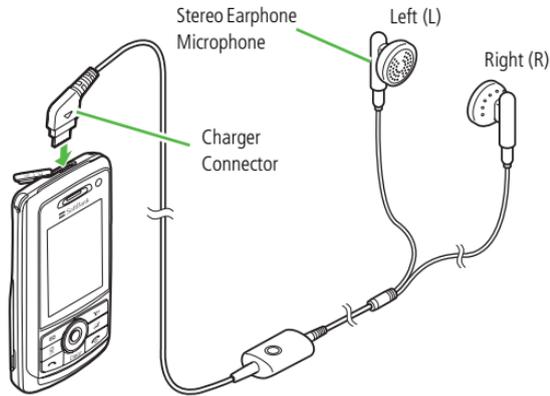
Media Player

About Media Player	11-2	Streaming	11-17
Playing Music	11-3	Entering URL Directly.....	11-17
Playing Files from Playlists	11-7	Accessing from Bookmark	11-18
Music Settings	11-8	Accessing from History	11-18
Repeat Mode.....	11-8		
Equalizer Type	11-8		
Tone Volume	11-9		
Audio Skin.....	11-9		
Visualization Mode	11-9		
Music Menu	11-10		
Playing Video	11-11		
Video Settings	11-14		
Repeat Mode.....	11-14		
Tone Volume	11-15		
Video Menu.....	11-15		
Video Thumbnail Display	11-16		
Resolution	11-16		

About Media Player

Play Data Folder sound/video files or stream online media.

- From Music or Video menu, select *Download music* or *Download videos*, to download files via Yahoo! Keitai.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone. Insert as shown below. Unplug Stereo Earphone Microphone to use Speaker. (When playing melody or video with Stereo Earphone Microphone connected while Manner Profile is active, sound is not output from Speaker when Stereo Earphone Microphone is disconnected from 805SC.)



- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone to accept Voice Calls. When 805SC rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the call.

Playable File Formats

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, 3gp (sound only))
Video	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp)

Tip

- **Other Playback Conditions**

Only files described above saved in Sound & Ringtones in Data Folder can be played from Media Player. To play other files, select from Sound & Ringtones in Data Folder.

Playing Music

1 Press **⊙** and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music*

2 Select a file

To select from All music files

Select *All music* and highlight a file

To select from recently played files

Select *Recent music* and highlight a file

To select from frequently played files

Select *Most played music* and highlight a file

To play files from Playlists files (⊕P.11-7)

To select from Artist files

① Select *Artist* and select a file

② Highlight a file

To select from Album files

① Select *Album* and select a file

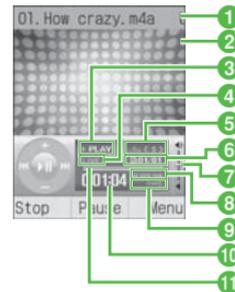
② Highlight a file

To select from Genre files

① Select *Genre* and select a file

② Highlight a file

3 Press **⊙** (Play)



Melody Player Window

① Artist's name and title (File name if title is unknown)

② Skin

③ Status : PLAY, PAUSE, STOP

④ Equalizer type

⑤ Repeat mode

⊕ (Off), ⊕ (One), ⊕ (Shuffle), ⊕ (All)

⑥ File number/Total number of files

- 7 Playing volume
- 8 Total playing time
- 9 Repeat section
- 10 Elapsed playing time
- 11 Progress bar

Tip

- **To select folders displayed in *Music* in Media Player**
(⇒P.11-10)

- **To end playback and return to *Menu***

Press  (Stop) then . In *Menu*, press  to return to the previous menu or close *Menu* menu.

- **To move to previous/next file**

Press  to go to next file. Press  to go back to the beginning of the file. Press  at the beginning of the file to go back to the previous file.

- **To repeat playing the specified part of the file**

During playback, press  at the starting point and press  at the ending point. Press  to cancel.

- **Incoming calls**

Playback pauses and 8055C rings; after call ends, a confirmation asking whether to resume playback appears. (When activating Messaging or Yahoo! Keitai during music playback, a confirmation appears after returning to Standby.)

- **Alarm times**

When playing file with Media Player, a confirmation asking whether to resume playback appears. When playing as BGM, playback resumes after canceling Alarm.

- **To save files as Ringtone**

Highlight a file in list or from pause or stop, press  (Set as) and select a function (⇒P.12-12). Only valid files can be saved.

- **To use other functions with Media Player activated**

Use Switch Bar (⇒P.1-21).

- **To exit Media Player while playing back music**

If  or  is pressed when Media Player is activated from main menu and playing music, Melody player window ends but playback continues. To handle music being played, select *Now playing* from *Music* in Media Player. To end playback, press  in Standby and a confirmation appears; select *Yes*. If activated from Switch Bar, playback may not continue.

- **Memory Card Music Files**

When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card music files appear in *All music* list, indicated by .

-  **All music**

Lists all playable files (up to 9999 files).

-  **Download music**

Shortcut to download site.

-  **Music search**

Shortcut to *Music search* site; search by genre or keyword.

-  **Recent music/Most played music**

Most recently played file appears first in *Recent music*. Most frequently played file appears first in *Most played music*. Each list holds up to 100 records.

-  **Album/Artist/Genre**

All files in *Music* are automatically sorted by *Album*, *Artist* and *Genre*, and listed in each file. (When inserting Memory Card containing playable files, loading may take longer.)

-  **Player Window & List Menu**

Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description
Send	Send a file. Select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with attached file (ⓂP.18-6). Select <i>Via bluetooth</i> to send a file to a selected party via Bluetooth® (ⓂP.13-5).
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select <i>Playlist</i> to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select <i>Files</i> to add selected files to Playlist.
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.
Add to playlist	Files in <i>All music</i> are added to Play List. Choose <i>Selected file</i> to add highlighted file, or <i>Multiple file</i> to add multiple files to Playlist.
Sort by	Sort files by <i>Title</i> , <i>Date</i> or <i>Artist</i> . The original order is restored when Media Player ends.
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.
Rename	Change file name.

Item	Description
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size, etc.
Stop	End playback.
Play via	In Player window, select Headphone or Speaker (➔P.13-6) for sound output.
Transfer to A/V headset/Transfer to Phone	Select Headphone or Speaker (➔P.13-6) as sound output source.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Create playlist	Create new Playlist (➔P.11-7).
Rename	Change Playlist name.
Shortcut	Check functions assigned to each key.
Time search	Play music from the specified point.
settings	Adjust Media Player settings (➔P.11-8).

Tip

- **When Transfer to A/V headset is set**
Raise/lower volume from A/V headset.

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform operations. Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

Key	Description	Key	Description
	Play/Pause		Menu
	Next song		Repeat section
	Previous song		Repeat mode
	Volume up		Equalizer type
	Volume down		Time search
	Stop		Visualization skin

Playing Files from Playlists

Create Playlist

Create up to 20 Playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlists* and select *Menu* → *Create playlist*
- 2 Enter Playlist name
- 3 Select the created Playlist
- 4 Select *Menu* → *Add* → *Files*
- 5 Check files to save and press  (Save)

Tip

- **To create a Playlist from tracks in an existing one:**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 3
 - ② *Menu* → *Add* → *Playlists*
 - ③ Select Playlist from which to add all melodies
- **To change Playlist name**
 - ① Highlight Playlist, select *Menu* → *Rename*
 - ② Enter Playlist name
- **To delete selected Playlist**
Menu → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*
- **To delete all Playlists**
 - ① Highlight Playlist, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*
 - ② Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
 - ③ Select *Yes*

Play

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select a playlist folder
- 2 Select a playlist and press  (Play)

Music Settings

Repeat Mode

Default Setting ■ OFF

Play a single track repeatedly, all files in All music, or tracks from Playlist, randomly or repeatedly.

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select *Menu* → *Settings*
- 2 Select *Repeat mode*
- 3 Select an item and press  (Save)

Equalizer Type

Default Setting ■ Normal

- Use this function only when listening to music with Stereo Earphone Microphone.

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select *Menu* → *Settings*
- 2 Select *Equalizer type*
- 3 Select a type and press  (Save)

Tone Volume

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Tone volume*
- 2 Use  to adjust volume and press  (Save)

Audio Skin

Default Setting ■ Rainbow wave

Set one of two images to appear while music plays.

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Audio Skin*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Visualization Mode

Visualization On/Off

Default Setting ■ On

Activate or cancel this setting to apply or cancel Skin, Controller and Backlight settings while playing MPEG4 AAC or AAC+ files.

- 1 Press , select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Music* and select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Visualization* → *Visualization mode*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Skin, Show Controller, & Backlight

- Default Setting**
- Skin: Flowers
 - Show controller: Show
 - Backlight: Normal

Select one of ten skins to appear while music plays. Set *Show controller* to *Hide* for full screen view. Set Backlight to *Always on* to see skin with handset open.

- 1 Press , select ***Entertainment*** → ***Media Player*** → ***Music*** and select ***Menu*** → ***Settings*** → ***Visualization*** → ***Skin, Show controller, or Backlight***
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Music Menu

- Default Setting** ■ Recent music, Most played music, Artist

Select folders displayed in *Music*.

- 1 Press , select ***Entertainment*** → ***Media Player*** → ***Music*** and select ***Menu*** → ***Settings***
- 2 Select ***Music menu***
- 3 Check folders to display and press  (Save)

Playing Video

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Video*

2 Select files

From *All Video*

Select *All Video* and highlight the file

From *Recent video*

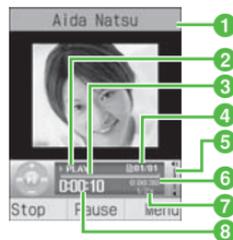
Select *Recent video* and highlight the file

From *Most Played video*

Select *Most Played video* and highlight the file

From *Playlists* (P.11-7)

3 Press (Play)



Video Player Window

- 1 Artist's name and title (File name when the video title information is unknown)
- 2 Playing status: PLAY/PAUSE/STOP
- 3 Progress bar
- 4 File no./Total number of files
- 5 Playing volume level
- 6 Total playing time
- 7 Repeat section/Playback speed
- 8 Elapsed playing time

Tip

- **To set video file as Ringtone**

Highlight paused file or one from list and press  (Set as). Set file as Ringtone (ⓂP.12-12). Valid only for compatible files.

- **Playlist**

- ① After Step 1, select Playlists and select *Menu* → *Create playlist*
- ② Perform Steps 2 to 5 in "Create Playlist" (ⓂP.11-7)

- **To capture still image from video**

Copy protected data cannot be handled. Captured image is saved to Pictures folder in Data Folder.

- ① Select *Menu* → *Capture frame*
- ② Press  (Save)

- **To play video file by searching time**

- ① Select *Menu* → *Time search*
- ② Enter a time

- **Memory Card Video Files**

In list window of *All Video*, music files in Memory Card also appear. Those files are indicated by .

- ☒ **All Video**

All (up to 9999) playable files appear.

- ☒ **Download videos**

Shortcut to download site.

- ☒ **Recent video/Most Played video**

Most recently played file appears first in *Recent video*. Most frequently played file appears first in *Most Played Video*. Each list holds up to 100 records.

- ☒ **Player Window & List Menu**

Select *Menu* in Player window or list and perform operations listed below. Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description
Full screen view	Play video in full screen view.
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select Playlist to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select individual files to add to Playlist.
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.
Stop	End video playback.
Edit	Edit video files (ⓂP.8-18).
Resolution	Set video display size.

Item	Description
Send	Send a file. Select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with attached file (➡P.18-6). Select <i>Via bluetooth</i> to send a file to a selected party via Bluetooth® (➡P.13-5).
Add to playlist	Add a file to Playlist in <i>All Video</i> . Select <i>Selected file</i> to add highlighted file to Playlist. Select <i>Multiple file</i> to add multiple files.
Sort by	Sort files by <i>Date</i> or <i>Title</i> . The original order is restored when Media Player ends.
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size, etc.
Play via	In Player window, select Headphone or Speaker (➡P.13-6) for sound output.
Transfer to A/V headset/Transfer to Phone	Select Headphone or Speaker (➡P.13-6) as sound output source.
Create Playlist	Create new Playlist (➡P.11-7).

Item	Description
Rename	Change Playlist name.
Shortcut	Check functions assigned to each key.
Playback speed	Change playback speed. Sound does not output while changing.
Time search	Play music from the specified point.
Capture frame	Capture an image from a video.
settings	Adjust Media Player settings (➡P.11-14).

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform operations. Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

In Normal Screen View

Key	Description	Key	Description
	Play/Pause		Repeat mode
	Next video		Full screen view
	Previous video		Time search
	Volume up		Resolution
	Volume down		Capture frame
	Stop		Play faster
	Menu		Play slower
	Repeat section		

In Full Screen View

Key	Description	Key	Description
	Play/Pause		Repeat mode
	Volume up		Normal screen view
	Volume down		Capture frame
	Next video		Play faster
	Previous video		Play slower
	Repeat section		

Video Settings

Repeat Mode

Default Setting Off

Play a file repeatedly or files in a folder randomly/repeatedly.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Video*
- 2 Highlight a file
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Repeat mode*
- 4 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tone Volume

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media player* → *Video*
- 2 Highlight a file and press  (Play)
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Settings* → *Tone volume*
- 4 Use  to adjust the volume and press  (Save)

Video Menu

Default Setting All Checked

Select folders displayed in *Video* for Media Player.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Video* and select *Menu* → *Settings*
- 2 Select *Video menu*
- 3 Check folders to display and press  (Save)

Video Thumbnail Display

Default Setting ■ On

Set whether or not to display thumbnails in Video list for Media Player.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Video* and select *Menu* → *Settings*
- 2 Select *Video thumbnail display*
- 3 Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)

Resolution

Adjust video size during playback or while paused.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Video*
- 2 Highlight a file and press  (Play)
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Resolution* and select a size

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is downloaded.

Entering URL Directly

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Streaming*
- 2 Select *Enter URL*
- 3 Enter a URL

Tip

- To stream files
Operate the same as *Media Player* (P.11-3, 11-11).

Note

- Even if streaming is paused, data transfer continues and packet transmission fees apply.

Menu

Selectable menu items vary by data.

Item	Description
Resolution	Set video size while playing or paused.
Add to Bookmarks	Save a current streaming as a bookmark.
View bookmarks	Access a streaming saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a streaming already accessed.

Accessing from Bookmark

Up to 20 bookmarks can be saved in Streaming Bookmark.

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Streaming*

2 Select *Bookmark*

Menu

Selectable menu items vary by data.

Item	Description
Open	Access URL.
Edit	Edit URL.
Delete	Delete one or all URLs.

Accessing from History

Up to 20 accessed bookmarks can be saved in Streaming History.

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Media Player* → *Streaming*

2 Select *History*

Menu

Selectable menu items vary by data.

Item	Description
Open	Access URL from <i>History</i> .
Delete	Delete one or all URLs.

Managing Files (Data Folder)

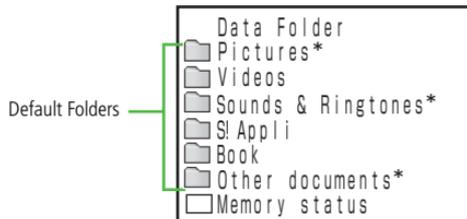
Data Folder	12-2	Managing Files/Folders	12-15
Default Folders	12-2	Create Folder	12-15
Saved Files	12-3	Changing a File/Folder Name	12-16
Opening Files	12-3	Moving a File/Folder	12-16
Using Photo Browser	12-5	Copying Files/Folders	12-17
Using File Viewer	12-6	Deleting a File/Folder	12-18
Viewing Graphics/Animation with SVG-T/Flash [®]		Deleting a Content Key	12-20
Viewer	12-9	Memory Card	12-20
Sorting Files	12-10	Precautions	12-21
Using Files	12-11	Inserting & Removing	12-21
Wallpaper	12-11	Rename Memory Card	12-23
Setting Sound File as Ringtone	12-12	Memory Card Details	12-23
Setting Video File as Ringtone	12-12	Format Memory Card	12-23
Setting Flash [®] file as Wallpaper	12-13		
Saving a vFile	12-13		
Data Folder Menu	12-14		

Data Folder

8055C files are organized in folders by file format.

Default Folders

Data Folder contains six default folders; new files are saved to the appropriate folder (see right). Create additional sub-folders in Default folders as required.



* Sub-folder *Pre-Installed*
(For files which come pre-installed with handset).

Folder	Description	File Formats ¹
Pictures	All still images	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
Videos	All videos	MPEG4 (3GP, MP4)
Sounds & Ringtones	All sounds recorded with Voice Recorder, downloaded music, and other sound files	SMAF/MIDI/SP-MIDI, MPEG4 Audio, AMR
S! Appli	S! Appli	JAVA
Book	Save downloaded electronic comic/ photo book files	CCF
Other documents	Documents, graphics/ animation requiring File Viewer for display; Flash [®] files, vFiles, etc. are saved here	SWF, SVG, vCard, vCalendar, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, Unsupported files

¹ Copy or move sorted files to other folders as required.

Tip

- **Savable number of files/folders**

Up to 999 files/folders can be saved each Default Folder.

Memory status

Select to view memory usage of each Data Folder.
Alternatively, use setup menu to view memory status (⌂P16-9).

Download links

 appears in Data Folder for download site shortcut. Select to connect to the download site.

With Memory Card inserted

In Phone Data Folder, press  (Memory) to display Memory Card Data Folder;  appears. Press  (Phone) to return to Phone Data Folder.

Download Book feature

In Data Folder, Use *Download Book* in Book Folder as a download site shortcut. Select it to open the site.

• Saved Files

• Opening Files

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select the folder where a file is saved
- 3 Highlight a file and press  (View/Play/Select/Start)

Tip

• File List Indicators

-  : Nontransferable
-  : Nontransferable & unusable
-  : Protected
-  : Copy Protected file (Transferable, Content Key valid)
-  : Copy Protected file (Transferable, Content Key expired)
-  : Copy Protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key valid)
-  : Copy Protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key expired)
-  : Set as Wallpaper (⌂P.12-11)
-  : Set as Ringtone (⌂P.12-12)

- **When another USIM Card is inserted into 805SC**
S! Appli is disabled. Also nontransferable/copy protected files except preinstalled ones cannot be used.
- **To enlarge or reduce SVG, SVGZ or SWF format images**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display an image
 - ② *Menu* → *Zoom*
 - ③ Press  (⊕),  (⊖), or  to enlarge, reduce, or scroll the image
 - ④ Press  to return to the previous window
- **To view File Details**
Menu → *Details*

Note

- Files over 3 MB cannot be opened. Files larger than 1600 x 1200 pixels cannot be edited or zoomed. Files over 1.3 MB cannot be set as Incoming image or Substitute Image. However, JPEG files that are displayable on 805SC can be zoomed.
- During music playback, thumbnails for video files do not appear in a list window for Video folder, etc.

Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

Select *Menu* → *Take photo*; activate Camera in Camera mode by highlighting the Pictures folder or an image file captured by 805SC.

Select *Menu* → *Record video*; activate Camera in Video mode by highlighting the Videos folder or a video captured by 805SC.

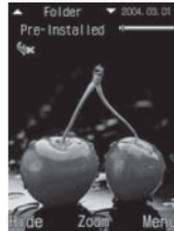
Select *Menu* → *Record sound*; activate Voice Recorder by highlighting the Sounds & Ringtones folder or sound file captured by 805SC.

Using Photo Browser

Sort images by Timeline, Folder, Composition or Color. Select an image file saved in Pictures folder; Photo Browser activates automatically. A horizontally long image rotates vertically to be enlarged. Select Normal View or Full Screen View.



Normal View



Full Screen View

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select *Pictures*
- 3 Highlight an image and press  (View)

To display in Full Screen View

- ① Press  (FULL)
- ② Press  to return to Normal View

4 Use  to select the sorting mode

5 Use  to move image

Tip

- **To enlarge an image**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display image
 - ② Press  (FULL) and press  (Zoom)
 - ③ Use  to enlarge image or  to reduce image, or  to scroll as required
 - ④ Press  to return to Normal View
- **To go to next images automatically**

Display images in turn using Slide Show

 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display an image
 - ② *Menu* → *Slide show*
 - ③ Press  (Stop) to stop Slide Show
To pause/resume Slide Show, press  (Pause/Restart).
- **To move images quickly**

In Step 5, use Side Key  or  to move images by category

- **Guide in Full Screen View**

Guide disappears when about 3 seconds elapsed after image is displayed. Guide also disappears by pressing  (Hide) while Guide is displayed. Press  to display Guide while hiding.

- **To view File Details**

Menu → *Details*

Using File Viewer

Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder; File Viewer activates automatically. Select Normal View or Full Screen View; navigate files via *Menu* or shortcuts.



Normal View



Full Screen View

2 Select file location then file

3 Select *Menu*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

To scroll

Press 

To change Display appearance

Menu → *Full screen view* or *Normal view*

To enlarge or reduce the image

① *Menu* → *Zoom*

② Press *In* or *Out* to enlarge/reduce

To fit document size to Display

Menu → *Fit to screen*

To move a page

Menu → *Go to* and select an item

To move to specified page

① *Menu* → *Go to* → *Page*

② Enter page number

1 Press  and select *Data Folder*

To capture current screen image

Select *Screen capture*

To rotate image 90 degrees clockwise

- ① *Menu* → *Rotate*
- ② *Menu* → *Rotate* to return to the previous window

To search words in the page

- ① *Menu* → *Search*
- ② Enter words
- ③ Press  to continue searching forward or press  to continue searching backward, for the same word

To view assigned shortcut keys

Menu → *Shortcut*

Tip

- **After capturing**

Captured files are saved in *Other documents* in 8055C Data Folder (Phone) as JPEG format.

File Viewer Settings

Default Setting ■ Panning: 10 pixel ■ Reflow: Off
■ Map on: On ■ Controller: On
■ Name: Capture

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select save location and select a file
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Settings*
- 4 Perform operations to set

To assign scroll range per press of 

- ① Select *Panning*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

To fit text width to Display

- ① Select *Reflow*
- ② Select *On* and press  (Save)

To set Map (shows display position) on/off

- ① Select *Map on*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

To set guide for shortcuts in Full screen view

- ① Select *Controller*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

To change default file name

- ① Select *Name*
- ② Enter a name

Tip

- **When *Reflow is On***

Fit text width (such as doc. or txt.) to 8055C window width.
No need to scroll right/left to show the contents.

- **When *Map on is On***

At the bottom left of the window, map showing the current position/area in the whole page appears. The current position/area is indicated in red frame.

Navigation Shortcuts

Key	Description
Side Key 	Zoom in
Side Key 	Zoom out
	Move to the first page
	Move to the previous page

Key	Description
	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
	Move to the next page
	Move to the final page
	Select Normal View or Full Screen View

Confirmation Window & List Menu

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Menu" ( P.12-14).

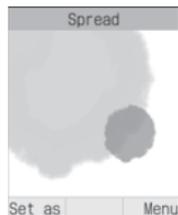
Note

- **If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.**
- **If a file includes any language other than Japanese or English, that file may not appear properly.**

Viewing Graphics/Animation with SVG-T/Flash® Viewer

View SVG, SVGZ, and SWF formatted files in Data Folder. When one of these files is selected from Data Folder list, the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer is automatically launched.

View the graphics/animation on Normal View or Full Screen View. In either mode, *Menu* and shortcut (Key operations) are available to control Display.



Normal View



Full Screen View

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select file location then file

3 Select *Menu*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

To change view

Menu → *Full screen view* or *Normal view*

To enlarge or reduce the image

① *Menu* → *Zoom*

② Press  () to enlarge image or  () to reduce

③ Use  to scroll the window

④ Press  to return to the previous window

To pause or restart an flash® image

Menu → *Pause* or *Resume*

To select image quality

Menu → *Quality* and select an item

To rotate the screen 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise

Menu → *Rotate* and select an item

Tip

- **To set an image for Wallpaper**

Press  (Set as) on Normal View, or in *Menu* of Full Screen View, select *Set as* and select *Wallpaper*.

 **Confirmation Window & List Menu**

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Menu" (➔P.12-14).

 **Sorting Files**

Sort files in various ways.

1 Select *Menu* → *Sort by*

2 Select an item

To sort files in descending order of dates

Select *Date*

To sort files by file types

Select *Type*

To sort files by file names

Select *Name*

To sort files in ascending order of size

Select *Size*

To sort files by status of Content Key

Select *Activation Status*

Tip

- **When folders are listed**

Folders appear at the top of list.

- **When sorted by *Type***

Files appear in alphabetical order by file extension (e.g., doc, jpg, swf, and such).

- **When sorted by *Name***

Files appear by file name: numbers → alphanumerics → Japanese syllabary

- **When sorted by *Activation status***

Files appear as follows:

Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (Content Key valid) → Copy Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable

Using Files

Wallpaper

Set an image file as Wallpaper of Display, an image in Phonebook, or a Substitute Image for Video Calls to display with incoming calls.

1 Highlight a file and press (Set as)

To set while viewing an image

Highlight a file, press  (View) then  (Set as)

2 Set the Use of the File

To set as Wallpaper

Select *Wallpaper*, confirm the preview and press  (Set)

To set as Caller ID Phonebook image

- 1 Select *Caller ID*
- 2 Search and select an entry in which to place the image and press  (Set)

To set as incoming Video Call Substitute Image

- 1 Select *Still picture*
- 2 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **When setting Memory Card file**

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy file to 805SC before setting. When setting copyrighted file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 805SC before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

- **To edit a still image** (➔P.8-16)
- **To create a mobile postcard** (➔P.8-6)
- **To print a still image** (➔P.13-12)

Setting Sound File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in Normal profile (☞P.3-3).

- 1 Press , select **Data Folder** and select save location for a file
- 2 Highlight a file and press  (Set as)
- 3 Set items

To set ringtone for Voice Calls

Select *Voice ringtone*

To set ringtone for Video Calls

Select *Video ringtone*

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries

- ① Select *Caller ringtone*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry

To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS

Select *Message alert tone*

Tip

- **When setting Memory Card file**

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy file to 8055C before setting. When setting copyrighted file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 8055C before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

- **Player Restrictions**

Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files are playable.

Setting Video File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in Normal profile (☞P.3-3).

- 1 Press , select **Data Folder** and select save location for a file
- 2 Highlight a file and press  (Set as)
- 3 Set items
 - To set video file as ringtone for Voice Call**
 - Select *Voice ringtone*

To set video file as ringtone for Video Call

Select *Video ringtone*

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries

- ① Select *Caller ringtone*
- ② Select a Phonebook entry

Tip

• Restrictions

Only copy protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.

Setting Flash® file as Wallpaper

1 Press  and select *Data Folder* →
Other documents

2 Highlight a file, press  (Set as)

To set while viewing a Flash® image

Highlight the file, press  (View) and press

 (Set as)

3 Select *Wallpaper*

4 Check preview window and press

 (Set)

Saving a vFile

vFile is the standard format to exchange Phonebook data, etc. via the Internet. 805SC uses vCard (extension: vcf) format for Phonebook data; also uses vCalendar (extension: vcs) format for Schedule/To Do data.

Save a vFile stored in Data Folder to Phonebook, calendar, or as a scheduled event.

1 Press , select *Data Folder* and
select save location for a vFile

2 Select a file and press  (Register)

Data Folder Menu

Menu vary by file or folder.

For File Viewer or SVG-T/Flash® Viewer, see "Using File Viewer" (☞P.12-6) or "Viewing a Graphics/Animation with the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer" (☞P.12-9).

Item	Description
Edit	Edit a still image or Videos (☞P.8-16).
Dynamic Effect/ Dynamic effect list	Create Flash® images using Still images (☞P.8-20).
Register to phonebook	Export a vCard file to Phonebook (☞P.12-13).
Register to calendar	Export a vCalendar file to Calendar (☞P.12-13).
Send	Send a file. Select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with attached file (☞P.18-6). Select <i>Via bluetooth</i> to send a file to a selected party via Bluetooth® (☞P.13-5).
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (☞P.8-6).
Zoom	Enlarge or reduce still image being confirmed (☞P.12-4).

Item	Description
Browser access	Access linked site included in electronic comic/photo book files.
Memory card/ Phone memory	With Memory Card, select to display Memory Card/handset Data Folder.
Sort by	Sort files (☞P.12-10).
Move	Move files from/to 8055C another folder (Phone) or to Memory Card.
Copy	Copy files and paste from/to 8055C another folder (Phone) or to Memory Card.
Set default memory	With Memory Card inserted, select save location for still images, videos, downloaded files. Select save location each time the setting is set to <i>Always ask</i> .
Add to playlist	Add files to Playlist.
Delete	Delete a file/files (☞P.12-18).
Delete folder	Delete a folder (☞P.12-18).
Take photo	Activate Camera in Camera mode (☞P.12-4).
Record video	Activate Camera in Video mode (☞P.12-4).
Record sound	Activate Voice Recorder (☞P.12-4).
Rename	Change file name (☞P.12-16).

Item	Description
Rename folder	Change folder name (➡P.12-16).
Show/Hide file info	In List window for Picture Folder with thumbnail view, set to display folder/file name when highlighted.
View By	Select List window type for Picture Folder. Select <i>List</i> to show folder/file in list view. Select <i>Thumbnail view</i> to show folder/file in thumbnail view.
Create folder	Create a new folder (➡P.12-15).
Print via	Print Still images using the printer via USB/Bluetooth® connection (➡P.13-7, 13-12).
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Details	Confirm file/folder properties.
Memory card settings	In Memory Card Data Folder window with Memory Card inserted; check details information, format, and change names (➡P.12-23).

Item	Description
Content key info	Show the list of Content Keys for the files in Data Folder; manage them by selecting <i>Delete</i> to delete (➡P.12-20) or <i>Details</i> to check the details.

Managing Files/Folders

Create Folder

Create sub-folder in Default folders.

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select **Default folder to create a sub-folder**
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Create folder*
- 4 Enter a name

Changing a File/Folder Name

Change the name of a file or a created sub-folder.

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select Default folder and highlight a sub-folder or a file
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Rename folder* or *Rename*
- 4 Enter a name

Tip

- **When a file is locked**
You cannot change the file name.

Moving a File/Folder

Move a file/folder to another folder or a location outside folders. Alternatively, with Memory Card inserted, move folders between 805SC (Phone) and Memory Card.

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select Default folder and highlight a sub-folder or a file
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Move*
- 4 Move file or folder

To move one file or all files in the same folder or all created sub-folders

Select *Selected* or *All*

To select and move multiple files or created sub-folders

- ① Select *Multiple*
- ② Check files or created sub-folders to move and press  (Move)

5 Select destination folder → *Move here*

With Memory Card inserted

- ① Select *Phone* or *Memory card*
- ② Select destination folder and select *Move here*

Tip

- **To check/uncheck all files or folders at once**

Press  (Mark all/Unmark all)

- **When a file is locked**

File cannot be moved.

- **When target file/folder with the same name exists**

Change file/folder name; enter new name in message text.

- **When a file is set as Display image or Ringtone**

To move a file to Memory Card, a confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to complete the move, canceling the settings.

When moving multiple or all files to Memory Card, a confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to complete the move, canceling the settings. Select *No* to move files except those set as Display images or Ringtones (those settings remain). Press  to cancel moving files.

Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in 805SC.
- Nontransferable and unusable files () , encrypted files (), or nontransferable and copy protected files ( , ) cannot be moved to Memory Card.
- Nontransferable files () are saved as nontransferable and copy protected files () when moved to Memory Card.

Copying Files/Folders

Make a copy of a file or folder in another folder or a location outside folders. Alternatively, with Memory Card inserted, copy folders between 805SC and Memory Card.

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Highlight a folder or file, select *Menu*
→ *Copy*

3 Copy file or folder

To copy one file or all files in the same folder or all folders

Select *Selected* or *All*

To select and copy multiple files or folders

- ① Select *Multiple*
- ② Check files or folders to copy and press  (Copy)

4 Select destination folder and select *Paste here*

With Memory Card inserted

- ① Select *Phone* or *Memory card*
- ② Select the destination folder and select *Paste here*

Tip

- To check/uncheck all files or folders at once (⊕P.12-17)

- **When a copy of a file or folder is pasted to the same location as the original**

The pasted file or folder is saved under another name, i.e., *_001* is automatically added to the name.

- **When target file/folder with the same name exists**
Change file/folder name; enter new name in message text.

Note

- Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

Deleting a File/Folder

Delete

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Highlight a file, select *Menu* → *Delete*
- 3 Delete the file

To delete one file

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all files from the same folder

- 1 Select *All*
- 2 Enter Phone Password press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

To select and delete multiple files

- 1 Select *Multiple*
- 2 Check files, press (Delete)
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)
(If all files are checked)
- 4 Select *Yes*

Tip

- **To check/uncheck files or folders at once (➔P.12-17)**
- **If a file is set as Wallpaper or ringtone, or locked**
A confirmation appears; select *Yes* to delete file. When deleting multiple files, select *No* to delete unset/unprotected files only.
- **When file has Content Key**
A confirmation appears; select *Yes* to delete file and Content Key.

Delete Folder

- 1 Press and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select Default folder and highlight a created sub-folder to delete, and select *Menu* → *Delete folder*
- 3 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*
When no file is saved in sub-folder
Phone Password is not required

Tip

- **If a folder contains files set as Wallpaper, ringtones, or locked/copy protected files**
A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to execute folder deletion. Select *No* to delete only files without designated uses or protection, leaving the folder undeleted.
- **When file in a folder has Content Key**
A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to delete both the file and Content Key.

Deleting a Content Key

- 1 Press  and select *Data Folder*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Content key info*
- 3 Perform operations to delete

To delete a Content Key

Select *Delete Selected*

To delete all Content Keys

Select *Delete all*

Memory Card

8055C is compatible with microSD™ Memory Card.

Purchase microSD™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

Note

- **Protect important information**
SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phonebook entries, etc. in a separate place.
- **microSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch.** There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Tip

- **Memory Card size**
SoftBank recommends the use of 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1 GB, or 2 GB cards.

Precautions

Note the following precautions regarding microSD™ Memory Card usage and care.

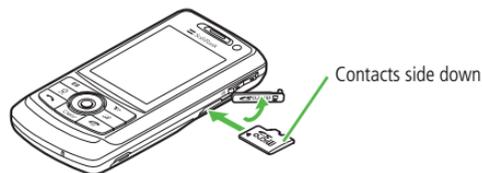
- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Card sizes.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

Inserting

1 Open cover



2 With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



3 Close cover

Removing

- 1 Open cover, gently push down on card until it clicks



- 2 Let card pop out, then remove it



3 Close cover

Tip

- **Removing Memory Card during operations**

If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Data Folder automatically appears in its place.

- **To back-up data to Memory Card** (P.12-16, 12-17)

Note

- **Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card.**
- **Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.**
- **Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts before inserting/removing a Memory Card.**
- **Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.**

Rename Memory Card

Change name that appears in Memory Card details.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card* → *Rename memory card*
- 2 Enter a name

Memory Card Details

Confirm name, memory capacity or remaining memory.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card* → *Memory card details*

Format Memory Card

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card* → *Format memory card*
- 2 Enter Phone password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

External Connections

External Connections	13-2
Bluetooth®	13-2
About Bluetooth® Communications	13-2
Sending & Receiving Files	13-3
Connecting Handsfree.....	13-9
Changing Bluetooth® Settings	13-10
USB Connection	13-11
Connecting to a PC.....	13-11
Connecting to a Printer.....	13-12
Mass Storage	13-13
Connecting to a PC.....	13-13
Disconnecting from a PC.....	13-13

External Connections

Exchange files wirelessly with Bluetooth®-compatible devices, or connect to PCs or printers via USB cable.

Bluetooth®

Exchange files wirelessly with Bluetooth® devices or use a Bluetooth® handsfree device for calls. Use Bluetooth® to connect PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

About Bluetooth® Communications

Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles.

8055C Bluetooth® specifications:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Version 1.2
Applicable profiles	Headset Handsfree Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging ¹ Basic Printing
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2
Line-of-signal distance ²	Approximately 10 meters or less
Frequency band used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B012718

1 For Printing function only

2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

Bluetooth® Precautions

- 805SC may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not possible with some Bluetooth® devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device.
- The 2.4GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is used by other devices that may reduce transmission rates/distance.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices/the environment.
- 805SC cannot be connected to other devices when it is connected to Bluetooth®-compatible headphones or headset.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used at the same time.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting USB cable.

Tip

- **To check Bluetooth® functions available**
 - ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth service*
 - ② Select an item and view the contents
- **To confirm the device address of 805SC**
Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My Information*

Sending & Receiving Files

Send and receive Phonebook entries, My Phonebook details, Schedule information, Task information, still images, video, sound files, vFiles, and others.

Activation

Default Setting Off

Activating Bluetooth® makes 805SC visible to other devices;  appears at the top of Display.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Activation*

2 Select a setting

Search New Device

Save up to 10 devices to My devices list. Enter the same Passkey on both 8055C and the device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
- 2 Select *Search new device*
- 3 When devices appear, select device to save
- 4 Enter 4-16 digit Passkey and press 
- 5 Within 30 seconds, enter the same passkey on the other device

Tip

- **Passkey**

The password used to connect Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Passkey. Passkey re-entry is not required for registered devices.

- **If authentication failed**

A confirmation appears; select *Yes* to retry.

- **If ten devices have already been registered**

The oldest device is deleted so that new one can be registered. If all devices are authorized, device memory full message appears.

- **To check Bluetooth® functions available for each device**

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
- ② Highlight a device, select *Menu* → *Service list*
- ③ Highlight an item, select *Menu* → *Help*

- **To change the name of a registered device**

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
- ② Highlight a device, select *Menu* → *Rename*
- ③ Enter a new name

- **To delete a device from My devices**

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
- ② Highlight a device, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* or *All*
- ③ Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) (In the case of *All* only) and select *Yes*

- **To search for or register a device from other Bluetooth®-compatible devices (➔P.13-10)**

My devices list Indicators

Device name is preceded by one of these indicators:

-  : Personal Computer
  : Mobile phone
 : Handsfree device/Headset
 : PDA
  : Printer
  : Other

When a connection request appears

If connection request appears, select *Yes* and enter valid Passkey within 30 seconds.

Connection requests from saved devices are connected automatically.

Sending Files

Send via function *Menu* menu. Transfer begins as soon as receiving device accepts it.

1 Select files to send

To send files from Data Folder or Phonebook

- ① In list window, select *Menu* → *Send* → *Via bluetooth*
- ② Check files or Phonebook entries to send and press  (Send)

To send files from Calendar

- ① In list window, highlight the data to send
- ② *Menu* → *Send schedule* → *Via bluetooth*

To send multiple Calendar and Task entries

- ① In list window, Select *Menu* → *Send all schedules and tasks*
- ② Check data to send and press  (Send)

2 Select receiving device

If receiving device has not been set

Select *Service new device*, search for that device and set it (☞P.13-4)

Tip

- **To send from Details or Playback windows**
Some functions allow sending option from Details/Playback window.
- **To check/uncheck all files at once**
In step ② in "To send files from Data Folder", press  (Mark all/Unmark all).

Receiving a File

When connection is approved, file reception starts and the received file is saved in Data Folder.

- 1 **When confirmation window appears, select *Yes***

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones.

- 1 **Play files via Media Player**
(☞P.11-3, 11-11)
- 2 **Select *Menu* → *Transfer to A/V headset***
- 3 **Select receiver's device**
To save device
Select *Search new device* and save device
(☞P.13-4)

Tip

• While Melody is stopped

- ① In Melody Playback window, select *Menu* → *Play via* → *A/V headset*
- ② Select the destination device or *Search new device* and search the device to register (➔P.13-4)

Print Data Folder Image Files

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible printer to 805SC; print Still images/vFiles in Data Folder directly. Set paper size/number on 805SC.

See printer User Guide for printer operations/settings.

- 1 In Data Folder list window, select *Menu* → *Print via* → *Bluetooth*
- 2 Check files to print and press  (Print)
- 3 Select receiver's device

To register receiver's device

Select *Search new device* to search and register (➔P.13-4)

4 Set items

Paper size

Select *Paper size* and the setting

To set the number of copies

Select *Number of copies*, enter the number of copies (1 to 99) and press 

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet

- ① Select *Page format* and select the setting
- ② When selecting *Duplicate* in step ①, select *Pages per sheet* and select the setting (1 to 16 up)

To set whether or not to print the date

Select *Date print* and the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame

Select *Frame* and the setting

Print quality

Select *Print quality* and the setting

5 Press  (Preview)

6 Confirm and press  (Print)

Accessing Connected Device Files

Access shared folders/files on other party's device.
Alternatively, receive/delete files on another device.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*

2 Select a device

3 Approve access on source device

Tip

- **To receive an accessed file**
After Step 3, highlight a file and select *Menu* → *Get*.
- **To receive an accessed folder**
After Step 3, highlight a folder and select *Menu* → *Get*.

Locations of received folders or files

Received folders are automatically saved to other documents folder in Data Folder. Received files are saved according to the file format; for example, JPEG and BMP files are saved to the *Pictures* folder and vFiles* to Other documents folder.

* An incoming vCard or vCalendar is automatically saved to Phonebook or Calendar.

Connecting Handsfree

Save device to *My Devices* beforehand (☞P.13-4).

Waiting for a Connection Request

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
- 2 Select a handsfree-compatible device
When Passkey entry window appears
Enter Passkey set for the handsfree device

Answering Mode

Default Setting ■ Normal

In *Automatic*, calls are answered automatically.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Answering mode* and select a setting
- 2 Select a setting

Tip

- To set the time (seconds) before automatic reception
After Step 2, select *Automatic* and entire time.

Handsfree Mode

Default Setting ■ Handsfree Mode

Select handsfree device usage mode.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Handsfree Setting*

2 Select a setting

Tip

- **Private Mode**
Answer outgoing/incoming calls with 805SC for calls made with 805SC; answer outgoing/incoming calls with handsfree devices for calls made with handsfree devices.
- **Handsfree Mode**
Use handsfree device for all calls.

Changing Bluetooth® Settings

My Phone's Visibility

Default Setting ■ On

To enable search and saving from other Bluetooth®-compatible devices, make 805SC visible.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My phone's visibility*

2 Select a setting

Bluetooth® Name

Default Setting ■ 805SC

Change name appearing for 805SC on other devices.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My Information*

2 Select *Bluetooth Name*

3 Modify the name and press 

Secure Mode for Data Transfer

Default Setting ■ On

If *On* is set, a confirmation appears before transfers.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Secure mode* and select a setting

USB Connection

Connect 805SC to a PC via USB cable to transfer data between the devices. Alternatively, connect a printer to print still images.

Connecting to a PC

Perform the following operations:

- Transfer 805SC Data Folder files to a PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform packet data communications

Before Using USB Connection

Install USB driver and Samsung PC Studio beforehand. For more about installation, PC operating environment, etc., see attached CD-ROM User Guide.

Connecting to a Printer

Connect 805SC to a PictBridge-compatible printer with a USB cable and print still images directly from Data Folder. Set paper size, number of prints, and other items on 805SC.

For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see the printer's User Manual.

Printing a Still Image from Data Folder

13

External Connections

1 Highlight an image file in Data Folder

2 Select *Menu* → *Print via* → *USB*

3 Connect 805SC to printer via USB cable

4 Set items

Paper size

Select *Paper size* and select the setting

To set number of prints

Select *Number of copies*, enter number (1 to 99)

and press 

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet

① Select *Page format* and select the setting

② When selecting *Duplicate* in step ①, select

Pages per sheet and select the setting (1 to 16 up)

To set whether or not to print the date

Select *Date print* and select the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame

Select *Border* and select the setting

Print quality

Select *Print quality* and select the setting

5 Press 

6 Check the preview window and press  (Print)

Note

- Never disconnect the USB cable during printing.

Mass Storage

With Memory Card inserted, connect 805SC to a PC via USB cable; exchange files with PC via Memory Card.

Connecting to a PC

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Mass Storage*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm)
- 3 Connect 805SC to a PC via USB cable
- 4 Exchange files with PC

Tip

- While Mass storage is active *Offline mode* is activated.

Disconnecting from a PC

- 1 While connected, press  (Exit)
- 2 From the PC, perform operations to disconnect hardware devices
- 3 Unplug the USB cable

Note

- Do not remove USB cable before disconnecting.

Security

Change Phone Password	14-2	Black List	14-10
PIN	14-2	Restoring Defaults	14-11
Changing PIN/PIN2.....	14-2	Clear Memory	14-11
PIN Lock.....	14-3	Reset Settings	14-11
Resetting PIN Lock.....	14-3	Reset All	14-12
USIM Lock	14-4		
Handset Security	14-5		
Phone Lock.....	14-5		
Password Lock	14-5		
Privacy Lock.....	14-6		
Activate Secret Mode.....	14-6		
Mobile Tracker	14-7		
Rejecting Incoming Calls	14-8		
Reject Withheld	14-8		
Reject Unavailable	14-9		
Reject Payphone	14-9		
Reject Unknown	14-9		

Change Phone Password

Default Setting ■ 9999

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Change phone password*
- 2 Enter current Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- 3 Enter new 4-digit Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- 4 Enter new Phone Password again and press  (Confirm)

PIN

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For more information, see "USIM Card" (P.1-2).

Changing PIN/PIN2

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN code* or *Change PIN2 code*
- 2 Enter current PIN or PIN2 and press  (Confirm)
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press  (Confirm)
- 4 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press  (Confirm)

Note

- When *PIN lock* (⊕P.14-3) is set to *Disable*, PIN cannot be changed.

PIN Lock

To require PIN authentication each time the power is turned on, set this function to *Enable*.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *PIN lock*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)
- 3 Enter PIN and press  (Confirm)

Resetting PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is been incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN or PIN2 lock is set, restricting operations of 805SC. Unlock PIN or PIN2 lock.

- 1 In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code and press  (Confirm)
- 2 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press 
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press 

Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact Customer Service (P.26-24).
- If incorrect PUK Code is entered ten consecutive times, USIM Card is locked (turning 805SC off does not reset count).
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (P.26-24).

USIM Lock

Default Setting ■ Disable

Activate to disable 805SC unless USIM password is entered whenever a different USIM Card is installed.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *USIM lock*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)
- 3 Enter a USIM password (4 to 8 digits) and press  (Confirm)

To set *Disable*
Setting is saved and operation complete.

To set *Enable*
Proceed to Step 4
- 4 Enter the USIM password again and press  (Confirm)

Tip

- **USIM password**

This is a password dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM password matches, another USIM Card may be used in 805SC.

Change USIM password each time USIM check setting is set to *Enable*.

- **When you forget your USIM password**

Insert a USIM Card (with USIM lock set to *Enable*) in 805SC and execute All reset (➤P.14-12).

Handset Security

Phone Lock

Default Setting ■ Disable

Set *Phone lock* to *Enable*; then Phone Password entry is required each time the power is turned on.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Phone lock*

- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

Password Lock

Default Setting ■ Disable

Set *Password lock* to *Enable*; Press any key in Standby; Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password to cancel Password lock; 805SC operations are enabled.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Password lock*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

Tip

- When *Password lock* is canceled
Password lock is automatically set to *Disable*.

Privacy Lock

Default Setting ■ Unlock all

Activate to require Phone Password entry to open *All*, *Messages*, *Data Folder*, *Phonebook*, *Call log* or *Calendar*.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Privacy lock*
- 2 Check the functions to lock and press  (Save)
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

Activate Secret Mode

Default Setting ■ Hide

Activate Secret Mode to hide Secret Phonebook entries.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Activate Secret mode*
- 2 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- 3 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- Under following conditions, 8055C turns the setting to *Hide*; *Activate Secret mode* is set to *Show* then 8055C is powered on again.

Mobile Tracker

Default Setting ■ Off

Activate to receive notification whenever a different USIM Card is inserted. Enter up to two SMS addresses via which to receive notification.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Mobile tracker*
- 2 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- 3 Select Activation field
- 4 Select *On* and press  (Select)
- 5 Select Recipients field and enter an address

To select an address from Phonebook

- ① Highlight To field and select *Menu* → *Phonebook*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.5-10)
- ③ Highlight phone number and press  (Select)

To enter a phone number directly

- ① Highlight To field and select *Menu* → *Direct input*
- ② Enter phone number

- 6 Press  (Done)
- 7 Select Sender field and enter a sender's name
- 8 Press  (Save)
- 9 Press  (Accept) after checking the items

Tip

- **To delete an address**

After Step 5, highlight the address, select *Menu* → *Delete*.

 **With a different USIM Card is inserted**

If Mobile Tracker is on, SMS notification is sent to specified address when 805SC is turned on; nothing appears on 805SC. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.

 **Rejecting Incoming Calls**

Automatically reject calls with no Caller ID, calls from payphone or from numbers that are not saved in Phonebook. Reject nuisance calls by saving phone numbers to Black List.

 **Reject Withheld**

Default Setting Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Select **Reject withheld field**
- 3 Select a setting and press 
- 4 Press  (Save)

Reject Unavailable

Default Setting ■ Off

Reject/accept calls by callers who are unable to send caller ID, like International calls from overseas/transferred calls from landlines.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Select Reject unavailable field
- 3 Select a setting and press 
- 4 Press  (Save)

Reject Payphone

Default Setting ■ Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Select Reject payphone field
- 3 Select a setting and press 
- 4 Press  (Save)

Reject Unknown

Default Setting ■ Off

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*

- 2 Select Reject unknown field
- 3 Select a setting and press 
- 4 Press  (Save)

Black List

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Select Black list field
- 3 Set the phone number
 - To enter a phone number directly
 - ① *Menu* → *Add* → *Direct input*
 - ② Enter phone number
 - To select a phone number from Phonebook
 - ① *Menu* → *Add* → *Phonebook*
 - ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-10)
 - ③ Select phone number

To enter a phone number using Call Log

- ① *Menu* → *Add* → *Call log*
- ② Select the log record

- 4 Press  and press  (Save)

Tip

- To delete phone numbers from Black list
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Highlight the phone number to delete, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* or *All* → *Yes*

Reject Black List

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Select Reject black list field
- 3 Select a setting and press 
- 4 Press  (Save)

📠 Calls from phone numbers in *Black list*

Calls are not connected. Caller hears a busy tone. *Missed call* appears in Standby. Press  (View) to see Missed Calls.

🔍 Restoring Defaults

🔍 Clear Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging folders, Phonebook (Phone) entries, and Calendar entries each or all at once.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Clear memory*
- 2 Check items to reset and press  (OK)
- 3 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

🔍 Reset Settings

Clear Saved contents/settings and restore defaults. The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Phone settings	<i>Time & date</i> Time and Date fields
Display settings	<i>Brightness</i>
Call settings	<i>All calls</i> → <i>Reject incoming calls</i> → contents saved in <i>Black list</i> <i>Voice call/Video call</i> → <i>Diverts</i> <i>Voice call</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> <i>Call barring</i> <i>Voice mail</i>
Phonebook settings	<i>My phonebook details</i> , <i>Category settings</i>
Security	<i>USIM lock</i> , <i>PIN lock</i> , <i>Change PIN code</i> , <i>Change PIN2 code</i>

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Master reset* → *Reset settings*

- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Reset All

Restore 805SC defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/settings. Original files and S! Appli are restored.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Master reset* → *Reset all*

- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tools

Alarms	15-2	World Clock	15-18
Wake-up Alarm/Alarms	15-2	Viewing World Clock	15-18
Auto Power On	15-4	Selecting Areas	15-18
Calendar	15-5	Calculator	15-19
Calendar View	15-5	Converter	15-19
Saving New Entries to Calendar	15-7	Converting Currencies	15-19
Viewing Saved Calendar Entries	15-11	Converting Units	15-20
Editing Calendar Entries.....	15-12	Stopwatch	15-21
Deleting Calendar Entries.....	15-13	Dictionary (Japanese)	15-22
Calendar Menu.....	15-13		
Voice Recorder	15-14		
Voice Recorder Window	15-14		
Recording Voice.....	15-15		
Playing Voice	15-15		
Changing Voice Recorder Settings.....	15-16		

Alarms

Wake-up Alarm/Alarms

Save Wake-up alarm and up to four Alarm times. Add titles to appear at Alarm time. Use *Alarm activation* to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Alarms*

2 Select an alarm from *Wake-up alarm* to *Alarm4*

3 Select Alarm activation field

4 Select *On* and press 

5 Set items

Name (*Wake-up alarm* cannot be edited)

- ① Select Alarm name field
- ② Enter a name

Alarm time

Select Alarm time field and enter the time to set

Alarm sound or video

- ① Select Alert tone/video field
- ② Select the location of sound file or video file, select an alarm sound or video and press 

Vibrator

- ① Select Vibration field
- ② Select a setting and press 

Alarm volume

- ① Select Volume field
- ② Use  to adjust the volume
- ③ Press  (Play) to check the volume and press  (Save)

To set whether to sound repeatedly or once

- ① Select Repeat field
- ② Select *Everyday* or *Once alarm* and press 

To set days of the week for a repeated alarm to sound

- ① Select Repeat field
- ② Select *Specify days* and press  (Edit)
- ③ Check the days to set and press  (OK)

Snooze procedure

- ① Select Snooze field
- ② Select the setting and press 

Snooze repeat time(s)

- ① Select Snooze repeat times field
- ② Select the setting and press 

If you do not want to activate Alarm yet

- ① Select Alarm activation field
- ② Select *Off* and press 

6 Press  (**Save**)

Tip

- **When wake-up alarm/alarms are set**
 appears.
- **When wake-up alarm and/or multiple alarms have been set for the same activation time**
Wake-up alarm takes priority over *Alarm1* to *Alarm4*. Among alarms, the last set one takes priority.
- **Alarm volume settings**
Select  to adjust volume step by step. Alarm volume become louder gradually.
- **When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound**
A confirmation appears asking whether to copy file to 8055C before setting. When setting copyrighted file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 8055C before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

When alarm time arrives

Alarm sounds and a message appears. If set to mute ( P.10-3), handset vibrates. Press any key once to stop Alarm sound and once more to clear the message.

☒ When Snooze is set

Alarm sounds for one minute at the specified interval, or until Snooze is canceled. Alarm repeats the specified times. If no handset operations take place, and any key other than  or  (End) is pressed while alarm sounds, alarm is automatically reset to sound again at the specified interval. To cancel Snooze, press  or  (End).

☒ When a call is being initiated or during a call

When 805SC is engaged (*Connecting*... appears), a tone sounds and an indicator appears; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to cancel tone. When a call is being initiated (*Dialing*... appears), an indicator appears. Press any key twice to clear indicator; if Snooze *On*, press  (End). When an alarm with video set is activated during a call, alarm sounds and pre-installed animation appears.

☒ While capturing video or recording sound

Alarm sounds when image capturing or recording ends.

Auto Power On

Default Setting Off

When this setting is active, 805SC automatically turns on at Wake-up alarm or Alarm time.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Alarms* → *Auto power*

2 Select *On* or *Off*

Note

- When *Auto power* is set to *On*, alarms set to be activated within 3 minutes after power is off are disabled.
- Cancel *Auto Power On* near electronic devices employing high precision or low frequency signals, in places where mobile phone use is prohibited, like airplanes or hospitals.

☒ At Wake-up Alarm/Alarm Time

805SC automatically turns on and Alarm sounds. Press any key to cancel Alarm ( P.15-4). 805SC returns to Standby.

Calendar

Calendar View

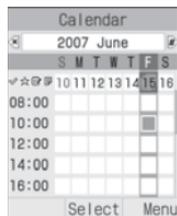
1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

Viewing

View Calendar in Monthly, Weekly or Daily view.



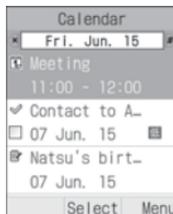
Monthly View Window



Weekly View Window

-  : Highlighted position
-  (Date in orange) : Current day
- Date in red: Holiday/Sunday

-  (In Blue) : Schedule registered
-  (In Green) : Memo registered
-  (In Red) : Task registered



Daily View Window

-  : Schedule
-  : Schedule (No category)
-  : Schedule (Appointment)
-  : Schedule (Meeting)
-  : Schedule (Business)
-  : Schedule (Holiday)
-  : Schedule (Anniversary)
-  : Schedule (Birthday)
-  : Schedule (Phone call)
-  : Schedule (Date)
-  : Schedule (Travel)
-  : Schedule (Miscellaneous)
-  : Holiday
-  : Memo
-  : Task
-  : Priority
-  : Alarm set
-  : Repetition set

Tip

- **To see previous or later months in Monthly view**
Press  or highlight Year/Month field and press 
- **To see previous or later weeks in Weekly view**
Press  or highlight Year/Month field and press 
- **To see previous later days in Daily view**
Press , , or 

- **To view a particular month or week**

From Monthly view window or Weekly view window, change Display by specifying year, month, and day as follows.

- ① In the calendar window, select *Menu* → *Go to*
 - ② Select Date, enter the year, month, and day and press 
- When *Today* is selected in step ②, the current date is highlighted on the window of the current month or week.

Calendar Window Format

- Default Setting**
- Starting day: Sunday
 - Default view mode: Monthly view

Set first day of the week to Sunday or Monday as well as the default Calendar window.

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Settings*

3 Set items

First day of week

- ① Select *Starting day*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Default view mode

- ① Select *Default view mode*
- ② Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- **When settings are changed**

A change in *Starting day* is immediately reflected. Selecting the settings of *Default view mode* can be applied when you deactivate calendar and then reactivate it.

- **To temporarily change Display mode**

In the calendar window, select *Menu* → *View mode* → Display mode

Saving New Entries to Calendar

Scheduled Events

Save a maximum of 100 items.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new* → *Schedule*

3 Set items

Title

Select Title field and enter a text

Details

Select Details field and enter a text

Starting date

Select Start date field and enter a date

Starting time

Select Start time field and enter a time

Ending date

Select End date field and enter a date

Ending time

Select End time field and enter a time

Event location

Select Location field and enter a text

Category

Select Category field and select a category

Alarm

- ① Check Alarm field
- ② Select Before field, enter an interval before Alarm time, highlight Unit field and use  to switch to an appropriate unit
- ③ Select Alert tone/video field, select a location of sound files and select an alert tone
- ④ Select Vibration field, select a setting and press 
- ⑤ Select Volume field, use  to adjust volume and press  (Save)

Repeat

- ① Check Repeat field
- ② Highlight Time cycle field and use  to switch to an appropriate time cycle unit
- ③ Select Value field and enter a value
- ④ Select Until field and enter a year, month, and day to stop repetition

Expiry time for a Calendar Event

Highlight Expiry field and use  to switch the expiry limit

4 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a Start/End date**

Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Start date or End date field.

- **When an event has expired**

Event is automatically deleted from Calendar. For example, if expiry is *After 1 year*, and repetition is not set, it is deleted after one year from the event end date. With repetition set, it is deleted one year after the end date of the last repetition. To cancel automatic deletion, set *Disable* for expiry date.

- **When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound**

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy file to 805SC before setting. When setting copyrighted file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 805SC before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

Holiday

Register a maximum of 50 holidays.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new* → *Holiday*

3 Set items

Text

- ① Select Text entry field
- ② Enter text

Date

Select Date field and enter the date

To set to repeat every year

Check Repeat every year field

4 Press (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a date**
Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Date field.

Memo

Register a maximum of 20 memos. Memos can be registered even while talking (☞P.2-8, 6-5).

1 Press and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new* → *Memo*

3 Select the memo text box and enter text

Set the date

Select Date and enter the date

4 Press (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a date** (☞P.15-9)

Tasks

Register a maximum of 100 time-limited items and manage them in a list.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new* → *Task*

3 Select items

Title

- 1 Select Title field
- 2 Enter title

Description of the task

- 1 Select Task field
- 2 Enter text

Starting date

Select Start date field and enter the date

Due date

Select Due date field and enter the date

Alarm

- 1 Check Alarm field
- 2 Select Before field, enter an interval before Alarm time, highlight Scheduling field and use  to select *week* or *day*
- 3 Select Alarm time field and enter a time
- 4 Select Alert tone/video field, select the location of sound files and select an alert tone
- 5 Select Vibration field and select a setting
- 6 Select Volume field, use  to adjust volume and press  (Save)

Priority level

Highlight Priority field and use  to select a value

4 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **To simplify Start or Due date entry**

Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Starting date and Due date field.

- **When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound**

A confirmation appears asking whether to copy file to 805SC before setting. When setting copyrighted file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 805SC before setting. Select *Yes* to complete setting.

When the time set for Alarm comes

Alarm sounds and a message appears. To stop Alarm, press any key. Press  to cancel the message display.

With no action to stop Alarm, a message appears indicating Missed alarm event. Press  (View) to view the message.

When a call is being initiated or during a call

During a call or connection (*Connecting*... appears), 805SC notifies with a short sound and indicator; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to notify only by an indicator. When an outgoing call is being Initiated (*Dialing*... appears), 805SC notifies only by an indicator. Press  to clear an indicator.

Viewing Saved Calendar Entries

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Open a window listing items

To check items of one day

Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use  to change the date on Daily view window

To check registered contents by type

Menu → *Event list* and select a type

To check the message of a missed alarm

Menu → *Missed alarm event*

3 Select and view details

Tip

- **To check calendar item status**

Select *Menu* in Calendar or registered contents list and *Memory status*; check the number of savings by type.

Editing Calendar Entries

Editing and Saving as New Entries

In addition to edit and update the entries, edit the entries and save them as new entries.

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*
- 2 Open a window listing entries
To open a window listing entries for a single day
Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use  to change the date on Daily view window
To view events by type
Menu → *Event list* and select a type
- 3 Select an item to edit
- 4 Press  (Edit)

- 5 Change the information as required
- 6 Press  (Save) and select *New* or *Update*

Marking a Task as Completed

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Event list* → *Task*
- 3 Highlight a completed task and select *Menu* → *Completed*
To remove the completion mark
Menu → *To do*

Tip

- To sort tasks

In the Task window, select *Menu* → *Sort by* and select a sorting type. Classify tasks into completed/uncompleted ones or sort them by due date or priority.

Deleting Calendar Entries

1 In Calendar window or saved contents list, select *Menu* → *Delete*

2 Delete entry

To delete only the highlighted entry

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all entries of current month or week

Select *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*

To delete only entries from a specific period of time

- ① Select *Periods*
- ② Enter the start and end dates
- ③ Press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all entries or all before the highlighted date

- ① Select *All* or *All past data*
- ② Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tip

- To collectively delete multiple registered items

Select registered unnecessary items from a list by type and delete them collectively.

- ① Press  and select *Tools* → *Calendar*
- ② *Menu* → *Event list* and select the type
- ③ *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- ④ Check the items to delete, press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

Calendar Menu

Perform the following operations from *Menu* on a window listing Calendar entries:

Item	Description
Add new	Save a new Calendar entry (➔P.15-7).
Send schedule/ Send task	Send Calendar entry via S! Mail (➔P.18-6) or Bluetooth® (➔P.13-5).
View mode	Select a display mode (➔P.15-6).
Go to	Display a particular month or week by changing Monthly/Weekly view window (➔P.15-6).
Event list	View events listed by type (➔P.15-11).

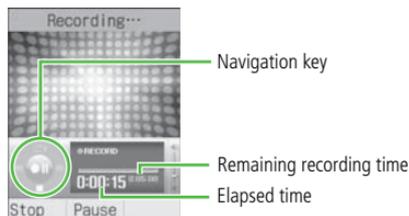
Item	Description
Send all schedules and tasks	Send multiple Schedules or Tasks at once
Delete	Delete a Calendar entry (➔P.15-13).
Completed/To do	Set or cancel the task completion mark (➔P.15-12).
Sort by	Sort tasks (➔P.15-12).
Save to Data Folder	Create and save vFiles to Data Folder <i>Other documents</i> or <i>Memory card</i> .
Settings	Select Calendar Display settings (➔P.15-6).
Missed alarm event	View the message of a missed alarm (➔P.15-11).
Print via bluetooth	Print highlighted schedule event or task via Bluetooth® printer.
Memory status	Check memory usage for Calendar functions (➔P.15-11).

Voice Recorder

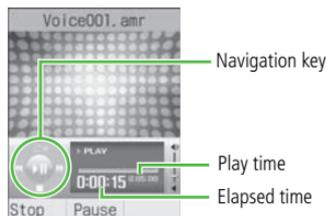
Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, during a call, via Data Folder *Menu* or a Message creation window.

Voice Recorder Window

Control Voice Recorder with Softkeys and navigation key.



Recording Window



Playback Window

Recording Voice

Files are saved in Data Folder *Sounds & Ringtones*.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*

To change the fixed recording time (☞P.15-17)

2 Press  (Record)

3 Press  (Stop) or continue recording until the set time runs out

4 As required, press  (Play) to replay

To pause

Press  (Pause)

To continue to record voice

Menu → *Record*

To perform operations for recorded voice from *Menu* (☞P.15-15)

Playing Voice

Replay a voice file saved in Data Folder.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*

2 Select *Menu* → *My sounds*

3 Highlight a file and press  (Play)

Voice Recorder Menu

Operate listed below from *Menu* before and after recording. *Menu's* selectable items vary by the conditions. For more information about available options after selecting *My sounds*, see "Data Folder Menu" (☞P.12-14).

Item	Description
Record	Start recording.
My sounds	Call up list of sound files saved in the My sounds folder.

Item	Description
Send	Send a file. Select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with attached file (➔P.18-6). Select <i>Via bluetooth</i> to send a file to a selected party via Bluetooth® (➔P.13-5).
Set as	Set voice for ringtone, etc.
Delete	Delete a recorded voice file.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm recorded sound file size, etc.
Record settings	Select the file name assigned automatically or the fixed recording time (➔P.15-16).

Changing Voice Recorder Settings

Default Name

Default Setting ■ Voice

The voice recorded with Voice recorder is saved under a name such as "Voice 001." "Voice" can be changed to another word.

1 Press  and select ***Tools*** → ***Voice recorder***

2 Select ***Menu*** → ***Record settings*** → ***Default name***

3 Enter a name

Tip

- **If the default name is changed**
The naming rule is applied from the next recording.

Recording Time

Default Setting ■ 5 min

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Record settings* → *Recording time*
- 3 Select a duration and press  (Save)

Set Default Memory

With Memory Card inserted, set save location to 805SC (Phone) or Memory Card for recorded sound files.

Default Setting ■ Phone

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Record settings* → *Set default memory*
- 3 Select the setting and press  (Save)

World Clock

World clock allows you to check the current time all over the world.

Viewing World Clock

- 1 Press **○** and select *Tools* → *World clock*



- Current time and city name of area 1
- Current time and city name of area 2

15

Tools

Selecting Areas

Default Setting ■ *Tokyo, Seoul* for both areas

When you save a second time zone, easily check the time at that area looking at World clock.

- 1 Press **○** and select *Tools* → *World clock*
- 2 Use **○** to highlight area 1 and use **○** to change city name
To set summer time
 - ① Press **Y'** (DST)
 - ② Check the area to set summer time and press **⊗** (Done)
- 3 Press **○** (Save)

Calculator

Arithmetic operations to a maximum of 13 digits can be performed.

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Calculator*

2 Calculate

To enter numbers

Press keys

To enter +, -, ×, or ÷

Press , , , or 

To display the calculation result

Press 

To enter ., (, or)

Press  (.) to toggle symbols

To move cursor left or right

Press  or 

To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression

Place cursor after a symbol to erase and press 

To erase both the mathematical expression and the calculation result

Press  (C) or press  for 1+ seconds

Converter

Convert the currencies for various countries or convert the units of length, weight, etc.

Converting Currencies

1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency*



Converter	
Currency	
USD	
300	
JPY	
32116.4658	
	
View Rate	Select Reverse

- Original currency field
- Original currency value field
- Target currency field
- Converted currency value field

2 In Original currency field, select unit

To replace the original currency with target

Press  (Reverse)

3 In Original currency value field, enter value

To enter a decimal point

Press 

4 In Target currency field, select unit

5 See Converted currency field

To check the exchange rate

- 1 Highlight either Currency field and press

 (View Rate)

- 2 Press  to return to Converter top menu

To change the exchange rate

- 1 Highlight either Currency field and press

 (View Rate)

- 2 Select the base currency to change the rate, highlight the currency, select *Menu* → *Edit*

- 3 Enter the rate and press  (Save)

To add a currency unit

- 1 Press  (View Rate)

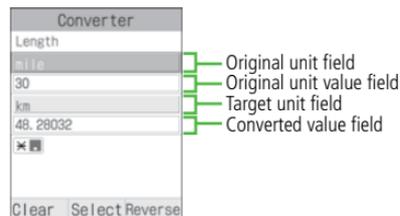
- 2 *Menu* → *Add Rate*

- 3 Enter the currency unit/rate and press  (Save)

Converting Units

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Converter*

- 2 Select *Length*, *Weight*, *Volume*, *Area*, or *Temperature*



3 In Original unit field, select unit

To replace original unit with target

Press  (Reverse)

4 In Original unit value field, enter value

To enter a decimal point

Press 

To enter/delete "-" for temperature

Press 

5 In Target unit field, select unit

6 See Converted value field

To clear the values

Press  (Clear)

Stopwatch

Use 805SC as a stopwatch; record up to ten lap times and total time.

- 1 Press  and select *Tools* → *Stopwatch*
- 2 Press  (Start)
- 3 Press  (Lap) to measure a lap time or  (Stop) to stop time measurement

Dictionary (Japanese)

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1 Press  and select *Tools* →
Dictionary

2 Select a dictionary

To use **English dictionary**

Select *English dictionary*

To use **Japanese dictionary**

Select *Japanese dictionary*

3 Enter a word to search

4 Select a target word

Advanced Functions

Calling Functions	16-2
Auto Redial	16-2
International Dial	16-2
Earphone call.....	16-3
Handling Incoming Calls	16-5
Anykey Answer	16-5
Ringer Reducer	16-5
Active Slide.....	16-5
Side Key Silence/Reject.....	16-6
Status Alert	16-6
Simple Search	16-7
Keypad Lock	16-7
Idle Shortcuts	16-8
Set Default Memory	16-9
Memory Status	16-9

Calling Functions

Auto Redial

Default Setting ■ Off

Set to automatically disconnect a Voice/Video Call initiated to a party that is busy and redial the same party soon. Automatic redialing repeats up to 10 times until  is pressed or 805SC is closed.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Auto redial*
- 2 Select a value and press  (Save)

Tip

- When *Retry with* is set for Video Call
Automatic redialing settings take priority.
- When receiver has activated **Voice Mail or Call Forwarding**
The call is forwarded and automatic redialing is canceled.

International Dial

International Prefix

Default Setting ■ 010

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *International dial* → *Int'l prefix*
- 2 Enter an international code

Editing Country Codes

Default Setting ■ 1: Japan 2: KOR 3: GBR 4: ITA 5: CHE
6: ESP 7: DEU 8: PRT 9: NLD 10: FRA
11: MCO 12: USA 13: SWE 14: AUS
15: CHN 16: HKG 17: TWN
18 to 20: Unused

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *International dial* → *Country codes*

2 Perform operations to add, change, or delete

To add or change

- 1 Highlight item to add or change and press  (Change)
- 2 Select Country name field and enter a country name
- 3 Highlight Country code, enter code and press  (Save)

To delete

Highlight item to delete, press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

Earphone call

Default Setting ■ Earphone call activate: Off
■ Call number: No list

When *Earphone call* is *On*, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *Earphone call*

2 Select *Earphone call activate*

3 Select a setting

4 Highlight *Call number* and perform operations to save phone number

To enter a phone number directly

- 1 Press  (Select) and select *Direct input*
- 2 Enter phone number

To select a phone number from Phonebook

- 1 Press  (Select) and select *Phonebook*
- 2 Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-10)
- 3 Highlight phone number and press  (Select)

To enter a phone number using Call Log

- 1 Press  (Select) and select *Call log*
- 2 Select the log record

5 Press (Save)

Tip

- **To delete a phone number**
 - 1 Perform Step 1
 - 2 Select *Call number* then *Direct input*
 - 3 Press  for 1+ seconds press 
- **To change a phone number**
 - 1 Perform Step 1
 - 2 Perform Step 4
 - 3 Press  (Save)

Handling Incoming Calls

Anykey Answer

Default Setting ■ Off

Answer Voice Calls using keys other than  (Accept) or .

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Anykey answer*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)

Tip

- Answering a Voice Call when *On* is set (➔P.2-3)

Ringer Reducer

Default Setting ■ On

Reduces ringer volume to Level 1 for the first two seconds.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Ringer Reducer*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Active Slide

Default Setting ■ Slide up: On ■ Slide down: Off

Open 8055C to answer an incoming call. Alternatively, close 8055C to disconnect a call during a call.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Active Slide*
- 2 Select *Slide up* or *Slide down*
- 3 Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)

Tip

- The contents of *Slide up* are:

On : Opening 805SC will answer an incoming call.

Off : Opening 805SC will not answer an incoming call.

- The contents of *Slide down* are:

On : During a call, closing 805SC will end a call.

Off : During a call, closing 805SC will not end a call.

Hold : During a Voice Call, closing 805SC will place a call on hold (when Call Waiting or Conference Call is in use); during a Video Call, placing a call on hold by closing 805SC is not available.

Side Key Silence/Reject

Default Setting ■ Silence

Use  or  to mute ringer or reject an incoming call.

Select from *Reject* (disconnect the call) or *Silence* (silence the incoming tone).

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Side key*

- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)

Status Alert

Default Setting ■ Missed call: Off ■ Messages: Off

Make a notification of missed calls or new messages by ringing, vibration or Keypad lighting.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Status alert*
- 2 Select *Missed call* or *Messages*
- 3 Select an item
 - To notify with ringtone and vibration
 - ① Select *Ringtone & vibration alert*
 - ② Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)
 - To notify with Keypad lighting
 - ① Select *Keypad light alert*
 - ② Select *On* or *Off* and press  (Save)

Simple Search

Default Setting ■ Off

When *Simple search* is *On*, enter numbers in Standby to search Phonebook entries starting with Reading name corresponding each number. Then search result (entry names and phone numbers) list appears.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Simple search*
- 2 Select a setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- To initiate calls using *Simple search* (☞P.5-12)

Keypad Lock

In Standby, with 805SC open, perform operations to set.

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds

Tip

- **With Keypad Lock active**
In Standby,  appears; close 805SC and perform any key operation, then popup message appears indicating procedure to temporarily cancel Keypad Lock.
- **When opening 805SC**
Key operations are enabled (Keypad Lock remains potentially active; close 805SC, then Keypad Lock is activated again).
- **To cancel**
With 805SC open, press  for 1+ seconds to cancel; with 805SC closed, press  for 1+ seconds to perform key operations temporarily.

Idle Shortcuts

Default Setting ■ 1: Camera 2: S! Appli

Up to nine frequently used functions can be saved; create own Shortcut Menu. In Standby, press  to access functions saved to shortcuts.

- 1 Press 
- 2 Highlight unsaved function entry box and press  (Assign)
- 3 Select the function
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to save the function

Tip

- **To change functions**
 - ① In Step 2, highlight the function, select *Menu* → *Assign*
 - ② Select *Yes* and select the function
- **To sort functions**
 - ① In Step 2, highlight the function, select *Menu* → *Change Order*
 - ② Use  to highlight the target function box and press  (Select)
- **To delete functions**
 - ① In Step 2, highlight the function, select *Menu* → *Delete*
 - ② Select *Yes*
- **To restore defaults**
 - ① In Step 2, highlight the function, select *Menu* → *Reset*
 - ② Select *Yes*

Set Default Memory

Default Setting ■ On phone

With Memory Card inserted, select save location to 8055C (Phone) or Memory Card. This location change is available for the data when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files from information window, receiving data via Bluetooth[®], or other occasions.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Set default memory*
- 2 Select the setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- **With no Memory Card inserted**
On memory card or *Always ask* is set; save location is automatically set to 8055C (Phone).

Memory Status

Check the following information:

- Available shared memory
- Status of SMS and S! Mail mailboxes
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar items registered
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)

Alternatively, delete saved entries and/or files.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status*
- 2 Select an item to check

Tip

- **To delete Data Folder, Calendar or Phonebook content**

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Highlight an item, press  (Select), select *Yes* and view an entry
- ③ Check the fields to delete, press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

- **To delete all contents**

After step ③ in "To delete the contents," enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

- **To check/uncheck all contents at once**

After step ③ in "To delete the contents," press  (Mark all/Unmark all).

- **When the checked contents contain the contents that functions or locks are set in**

After step ③ in "To delete the contents" or the "To delete all contents" operations, a confirmation appears. If you select *Yes*, the deletion is performed. If you select *No*, only files without functions or locks set are deleted.

Optional Services

Optional Services	17-2	Conference Call	17-8
Call Forwarding	17-2	New Call	17-8
Activating Call Forwarding	17-3	Engaged Conference Call Operations	17-9
Cancel All	17-4	Join.....	17-9
Check Status	17-4	Call Barring	17-10
Voice Mail	17-4	Restrict Calls or SMS	17-11
Activating Voice Mail	17-4	Cancel All	17-11
Cancel All	17-5	Changing Network Password.....	17-12
Check Status	17-5	Caller ID	17-12
Listening to Messages.....	17-5	Show My Number	17-12
Incoming Call Notification.....	17-6	Adding 186 or 184.....	17-13
Call Waiting	17-7		
Activating or Canceling.....	17-7		
Receiving a Second Call	17-7		

Optional Services

The following optional services are available on 805SC:

Service	Description
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Voice Mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via 805SC from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere.
Call Waiting*	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines.
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on up to six parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls.

* This service requires a separate subscription.

Note

- When *Out* appears, access services from a touchtone landline. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

Call Forwarding

Set forwarding condition and number, by call type (Voice Call or Video Call), beforehand, to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

Forwarding Condition	Description
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or 805SC is out-of-range.
Always	805SC does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically and Missed Call does not appear.

Note

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.

Activating Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call or Video call* → *Diverts*

2 Select *No reply* or *Always*; view the current settings

When the settings are acceptable

After viewing, press  to return to the previous window

3 Highlight *Divert to* field and enter a number to forward to

To select a phone number from Phonebook

- ① Highlight Forwarding address field and select *Menu* → *Phonebook*
- ② Select Phonebook, highlight a phone number and press  (Select)

4 For *No reply*, highlight *Waiting time* field and use  to set a time

5 Press  (ON)

Tip

- **When Call Forwarding (*No reply*) is active**
While 805SC rings/vibrates, answer a call or press  (Busy) to forward it.

Cancel All

Cancel all Diverts services at once.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call or Video call* → *Diverts* → *Cancel all*

Tip

- To stop Call Transfer service for each forwarding condition

- ① Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call or Video call* → *Diverts*
- ② Select *No reply* or *Always*
- ③ Press  (OFF)

Check Status

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call or Video call* → *Diverts* → *Check status*

Voice Mail

Forward an incoming Voice Call to Voice Mail Center or a specified number based on preset forwarding conditions (☞P.17-2).

Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.
- Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.
- Voice Mail is not available when *All outgoing calls* or *All incoming calls* in Call Barring is active (Call Barring takes priority over Voice Mail).

Activating Voice Mail

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail*
- 2 Select *No reply* or *Always*

3 For *No reply*, highlight **Waiting time** field and set a time

4 Press **ⓘ** (ON)

Tip

- **When Voice Mail (*No reply*) is active**
While 8055C rings/vibrates, answer a call or press **ⓧ** (Busy) to forward it.

Cancel All

Cancel all Voice Mail services at once.

1 Press **ⓘ** and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail* → *Cancel all*

Tip

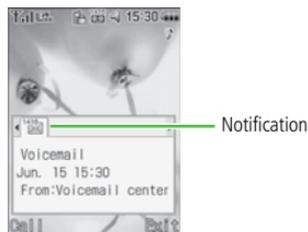
- **To cancel Voice Mail by forwarding condition**
 - ① Press **ⓘ** and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail*
 - ② Select *No reply* or *Always*
 - ③ Press **ⓧ** (OFF)

Check Status

1 Press **ⓘ** and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail* → *Check status*

Listening to Messages

When a caller saves a Voice Mail message, a notification appears in Standby and **1416** appears at the top of Display.



While Message Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice prompts.

1 Press (Call)

To check message details

Press  while message appears

Tip

- To delete a message without listening to it

Press  (Exit).

- To clear 

Voice Mail indicator disappears when messages are accessed via 8055C.

While No Message Appears

1 Enter 1416 and press

Incoming Call Notification

SMS is delivered for calls unanswered because 8055C is outside service area or off, or if a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center while the line is engaged.

Incoming Call Notification

1 Enter 1414 and press

To set via landline in Japan (toll free)

Dial 090-665-1414 and press 

2 Follow voice guidance

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service.

This service is only available for Voice Calls.

Activating or Canceling

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *Call waiting*

2 Activate or cancel the service

To activate

Press  (ON)

To cancel

Press  (OFF)

Receiving a Second Call

When there is an incoming call during a call, you are notified with a specific interrupt sound and display. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

1 When you hear the interrupt sound, press  (Accept)

2 Select *Hold active call*

To end current call and answer second call

Select *End active call*

3 Press  (Swap) to toggle the calls

4 To end the current call, press 

To end the call on hold

Menu → *End* → *Held call*

To end both calls at once

Menu → *End* → *All calls*

Tip

- **When one party ends a call with another on hold**
Press  (Retrieve) to talk to the waiting party.
- **When Call Transfer or Voice Mail service is active**
When the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is not available.

Conference Call

A separate subscription is required to use this service.

Talk with a maximum of six parties simultaneously.

New Call

When a new call is connected, first party is placed on hold.

1 During a call, select *Menu* → *New call* and enter number

To use Phonebook

- ① Press  (Search) and select Phonebook
- ② Highlight the phone number and press  (Select)

2 Press (Call)

Engaged Conference Call Operations

- 1 Call another party during a call (☎P.17-8)
- 2 Press  (Swap) to switch connected calls

Tip

- **To end the call on hold**
During a call, select *Menu* → *End* → *Held call*
- **To end all calls**
During a call, select *Menu* → *End* → *All calls*
- **When the connected party ends the call during Conference Call**
A party on hold remains on-hold state. Switch to the on-hold party to talk.

Join

- 1 During a call, initiate a call to another party (☎P.17-8)
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Join*

Tip

- **To talk with only one person**
During a call, select *Menu* → *Split* and select a caller to talk to
- **To end the call for a specific caller**
During a call, select *Menu* → *End* → *Select participant*, check callers to end and press  (End)
- **To end the all calls**
During a call, press 
- **When one party ends the call during Conference Call**
Continue talking with remaining parties.

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice/Video Calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

Item		Description
Restrict outgoing calls	All outgoing calls	Deactivates initiating calls and SMS sending, except emergency calls.
	Outgoing Intl calls	Deactivates initiating international calls and SMS sending except within Japan.
Restrict incoming calls	All incoming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving.

Setting restrictions requires Network Password (The 4-digit number dedicated to Call Barring service specified at the subscription).

Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered three consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For more information, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).
- If Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active, *All outgoing calls* and *All incoming calls* cannot be set.

Tip

- If a call is attempted while restricting outgoing calls
A message appears indicating that outgoing call restriction is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Restrict Calls or SMS

Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Call, Video Call or SMS.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring*
- 2 Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *SMS* and select a restriction type
- 3 Enter Network Password
- 4 Set or cancel call barring

To set

Press  (ON)

To cancel

Press  (OFF)

Tip

- **To check settings**

Perform Steps 1 and 2. After checking the settings, press



to return to the previous window.

Cancel All

Canceling outgoing and incoming call is available for each of call types (Voice and Video Calls, SMS)/transmission.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring*
- 2 Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *SMS* → *Cancel all*
- 3 Enter Network Password and press 

Changing Network Password

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring* → *Change password*
- 2 Enter current Network Password in *Old* field and new Network Password (4 digits) in *New* and *Confirm* fields, then press  (Confirm)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from 805SC.

Show My Number

Default Setting By network

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Show my number*
- 2 Select setting and press  (Save)

Tip

- **When set to *By network***
Automatically set to Show/Hide your number by current network status.

Adding 186 or 184

Use 186 (Show ID) or 184 (Hide ID) prefixes to show or hide your number when calling from 805SC, regardless of the *Show my number* setting.

1 Enter Show ID or Hide ID Prefix

To show Caller ID

Press   

To hide Caller ID

Press   

2 Enter a phone number

3 Press

To initiate a Video Call

Menu → *Video call*

Messaging

Getting Started	18-2	Saving Created Messages	18-20
Checking for New Messages	18-2	Save to Drafts	18-20
Retrieving Complete Messages.....	18-4	Save as a Template.....	18-21
Using Received Messages	18-6		
Creating Messages	18-6		
Procedures	18-7		
Address.....	18-8		
Subject.....	18-10		
Message.....	18-11		
Sending a Message.....	18-11		
Slide Show	18-12		
Edit Style (Arrange Mail)	18-13		
Templates.....	18-14		
Attaching/Inserting Files	18-15		
Message Field Files.....	18-15		
Creating & Inserting a File.....	18-19		

Getting Started

S! Mail

Use this service to send/receive long text messages, images, videos, other files, and sounds between S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs via e-mail.

A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail.

SMS

Use this service to send/receive short text messages between SMS-compatible SoftBank handsets using phone numbers.

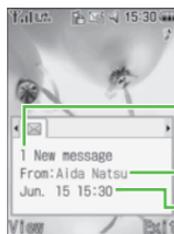
Tip

- **Retry function**

If the other party's handset cannot receive a message because the power turned off or out-of-range, 805SC keeps the messages saved on Mail Server; then send to the other party after signal reception recovers stable.

Checking for New Messages

When a message is received in Standby, reception notification appears. The number of received messages, senders and reception dates/times appear.



Reception Notification Window

1 Press (View)

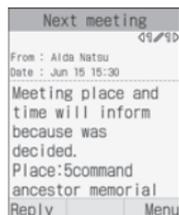


Message List Window

When multiple messages appear

Use  to select the  tab and press  (View)

2 Select a new message



Tip

- **When a message is received (out of Standby mode)**
By default, the number of received messages and sender's phone number or mail address (registered name if the entry is saved in Phonebook) appear as a telop at the top Display. After the telop disappears,  or  appears (➡P.1-9, P.21-7).
- **Received message count**
When there are unread messages, the total number of new and unread messages appears.
- **Sender information**
A phone number or mail address appears. When the sender has been saved in Phonebook, you will see the name saved in Phonebook. When an incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or an incoming image has been set for the group, the image appears at the same time. While Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *Secret - On* for message receiver/sender information; sender's name/image does not appear.

SMS Operations

In SMS window, press Side Keys   to enlarge/reduce text font size. Alternatively, press  or  for 1+ seconds to auto scroll. To stop auto scroll, press any key. During auto scroll operation, press  or  to adjust the scroll speed.

3D Pictogram (P.21-6)

If 3D Pictogram is set to other than Off, the message text appears in 3D Pictogram when you check a new/unread message (Except S! Mail that is set for Slide Show or with an attachment). After 3D Pictogram display ends or  (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Perform various operations after Message window appears.

Retrieving Complete Messages

When *Receiving options* is set to *Manual*, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 805SC as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1 Press  and select *Received msgs*

2 Select a message with the rest of it



Notification Details

3 Press  (Retrieve)

4 Select complete message



Message Window

Tip

- **Received Message list window indicators**
 - : Unread reception notification (Priority: High)
 - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)
 - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)
 - : Read reception notification (Priority: High)
 - : Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)
 - : Read reception notification (Priority: Low)
- **To retrieve complete messages from Message list window (P.20-2)**

Message window for S! Mail with an attachment

The first page shows the file name for the attachment and the second and subsequent pages show the message. Use  to read the message or select *Menu* → *Play* to start Slide Show.

Message window for S! Mail with Slide Show set

Select *Menu* → *Play* to play the slide. During playing, press  (Pause)/ (Stop) to pause/stop it. Use  to manually select pages.

Message window for S! Mail with an inserted file (P.18-17, 18-19)

If an image is inserted, the image appears with the message. If sound is inserted, select *Menu* → *Play* to play sound. If Slide Show is set, sound is played when the page with an inserted sound appears.

If video is inserted, select *Menu* → *Play* and press  (Video) to play video. If Slide Show is set, *Video* appears at the lower right and pressing  (Video) plays video when the page with video inserted appears.

Message window with a file requiring purchasing/obtaining Content Key

 appears on a page with an inserted file that you cannot view/play. Select *Menu* → *Download content key* to view/play the file.

Using Received Messages

Send a message directly to the sender.

1 Press  (Reply) on the Message window

2 Create a message and press  (Send)

Tip

- **Subject display of S! Mail for replies**
The subject of a replied S! Mail is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.

Creating Messages

Two types of messages are available on 805SC: S! Mail and SMS. The number of characters that can be sent and entry items are different between these types (Shown below).

		S! Mail	SMS
Number of characters that can be sent		Approximately 10,000 single-/double-byte characters ¹ Approximately 10,000 characters in one slide ² (Up to 294KB ³)	Maximum of 70 single-/double-byte Katakana characters Maximum of 160 single-byte alphanumerics (Up to 140 bytes)
Entry items	Address	Yes	Yes
	Subject	Yes	No
	Attachment	Yes	No
	Message	Yes	Yes

Yes: Available

No: Not available

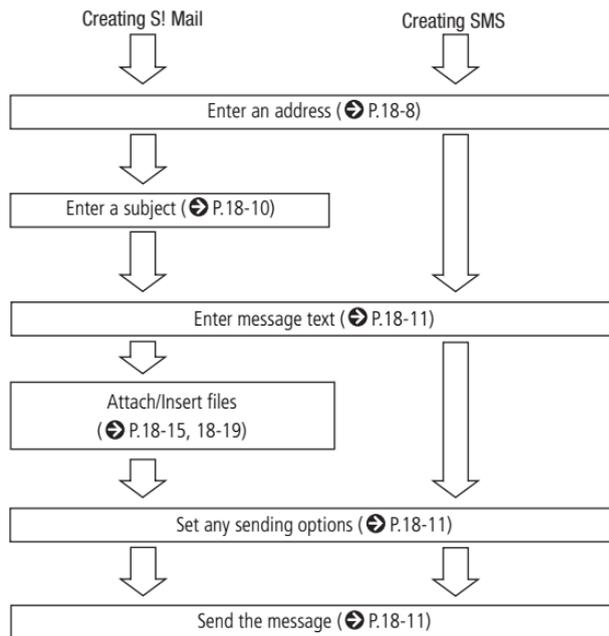
- 1 The number of characters that can be sent varies by the attachment size, etc.
- 2 Set a maximum of 20 slides in one message.
- 3 Total size of all kinds of messages (Including address, subject, text, and attachments).

Using Mail Art

In S! Mail window, view text/images consecutively like slides or with background color (➔P.18-12, 18-15, 18-19).

Procedures

Create messages in the flow shown below. Enter and set options other than Address as required.



Tip

- To set sending options beforehand (➤P.21-2, 21-5)

Automatic Change of Message Type

When message creation is started, the message type is set to SMS; it automatically changes to S! Mail when one of the following occurs:

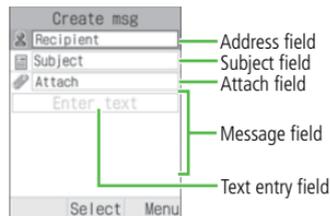
- Entering mail address as an address
- Entering a subject
- Entering characters exceeding the number of characters that can be sent by SMS
- Inserting files on Slide Show page
- Attaching or inserting a file
- Changing the address type to *Cc* or *Bcc*

When the message is modified to allow it to be sent as SMS, for example, by deleting an attached or inserted file or a subject, the message type automatically changes to SMS. Depending on message creation conditions, it may not automatically change type. If the mail type is not changed automatically, change it manually (➤P.18-11).

Address

Enter a phone number or mail address for S! Mail or a phone number for SMS as a message address. Up to twenty addresses can be entered.

1 Press and select *Create msg*



Message Creation Window

2 Enter an address

To select an address from Phonebook

- ① Select Address field and select *From Phonebook*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➤P.5-10)
- ③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press  (Select)

To enter an address directly

- ① Select Address field and select *Enter Recipient*
- ② Enter phone number or mail address

To select an address from sent records

Select Address field and select the record

To select an address from a Phonebook Category

- ① Select Address field and select *From Category*
- ② Select a Category, with/without Address selection window, highlight an address to enter and press  (Select)

3 Enter another address as required**To enter an address directly**

- ① Select Address field
- ② Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*
- ③ Enter phone number or mail address and press  (Done)

To select an address from Phonebook

- ① *Menu* → *Add recipients* → *Phonebook*
- ② Search and select Phonebook (⊕P.5-10)
- ③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press  (Select)

To select an address from a Phonebook Category

- ① *Menu* → *Add recipients* → *Category*
- ② Select a Category; with/without Address selection window, highlight an Address to enter and press  (Select)

Tip

- **To create a message using a template** (⊕P.18-14)
- **To confirm the entered address**
In Step 3, select *Menu* → *View recipient list*
- **To add an address after confirming entered address**
 - ① In Step 3, select *Menu* → *View recipient list*
 - ② Select Entry field and perform operation in the same way as Step 2
 - ③ Press  (Done)

- **To send a message after confirming entered address**

- ① In Step 3, select *Menu* → *View recipient list*
- ② *Menu* → *Send*

- **To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc**

- ① In Step 3, select *Menu* → *View recipient list*
- ② Highlight an address and select *Menu* → *Change recipients* → *To, Cc, or Bcc*

- **To delete an address**

- ① In Step 3, select *Menu* → *View recipient list*
- ② Highlight an address and select *Menu* → *Remove*

- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (☞P.4-11)**

- **Viewing Address field**

When multiple addresses have been saved,  and the number of addresses appear in Address field on Message creation window.

Note

- If shared memory (☞P.26-14) is less than 464KB, you cannot create a message. To create a message, delete unnecessary messages or files.
- A message created on 805SC may not appear the same way on the other party's phone.

- Message sent with Subject/Text in Hangul, may appear as spaces or be deleted on the other party's phone.

Subject

1 In Message creation window, select Subject field

2 Enter a subject

Tip

- To copy, cut, or paste characters (☞P.4-11)
- To set/release the prediction entry function (☞P.4-13)

Message

1 In Message creation window, select Message field

When Slide Show is set (☞P.18-12)

Select Text entry field

2 Enter a message

Tip

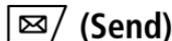
- To copy, cut, or paste characters (☞P.4-11)
- To use an SMS template or Phonebook entry (☞P.4-10)
- To change the font size of characters being entered
- In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Font Size* → *Small, Standard, or Large*
- To set/release the prediction entry function (☞P.4-13)
- To set Slide Show (☞P.18-12)
- To insert image files, etc. in a Message field (☞P.18-15, 18-19)

- To view the text in 3D Pictogram

In Message creation window, highlight Message field, select *Menu* → *3D Pict. Disp.*

Sending a Message

1 In Message creation window, press



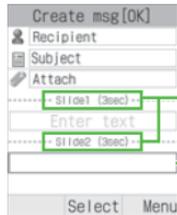
Tip

- To set sending settings for a message being created
 - ① In Message creation window, select *Menu* → *Sending options*
 - ② Select an item and make settings (☞P.21-2, 21-5)
 - ③ Press  (Apply)
- To change the message type
 - ① In Message creation window, highlight all fields except Address field
 - ② *Menu* → *Change to S! Mail* or *Change to SMS* → *Yes*

Slide Show

Open S! Mail window in Slide Show. Text messages, images, movies, and sounds can be inserted on each page of Slide Show. Set a maximum of 20 slide pages in one message.

1 In Message creation window, select *Menu* → *Insert* → *Text*



Slide page No. and display time

Added Text entry field

Message Creation Window

2 Select added Text entry field and enter a message

3 To add a Text entry field for Slide Show, perform Steps 1 and 2

Tip

- **To insert *Image, Sound, or Video***

Perform operations in "Inserting a File" (➔P.18-17).

Alternatively, other files can be inserted in the same page.

But image/video or sound/video cannot be displayed in the same page.

- **To delete a Text entry field**

① In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field

② *Menu* → *Remove* → *Yes*

- **To preview Slide Show before sending**

① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field

② *Menu* → *Preview*

③ *Menu* → *Play*

Edit Style (Arrange Mail)

Select font color, font size, background color, Slide interval, text/image order etc. for S! Mail messages.

Compose an S! Mail message then follow these steps.

1 In Message creation window, highlight Message field

2 Set items

Background color

- ① *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use  to display *All pages*
- ③ Highlight *Background colour* and use  to highlight a color

Slide Show interval

- ① Highlight a Character entry field to set
- ② *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ③ Highlight *Slide interval* and enter a time

Font color

- ① *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use  to display *All pages*
- ③ Highlight *Font colour* and use  to highlight a color

Font color for a single slide page

- ① Highlight a Character entry field to set
- ② *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ③ Highlight *Font colour* and use  to highlight a color

Font size for all pages

- ① *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use  to display *All pages*
- ③ Highlight *Font Size* and use  to display a size

Font size for a single slide page

- ① Highlight a Character entry field to set
- ② *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ③ Highlight *Font Size* and use  to display a size

To change text and image order

- ① *Menu* → *Edit style*
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use  to display *All pages*
- ③ Highlight *Order item* and use  to display *Text-Top* or *Image (Video)-Top*

3 Press (Save)

Tip

- **To preview the style before sending**

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field
- ② *Menu* → *Preview*
- ③ *Menu* → *Play*

Note

- *Edit style* or *Preview* does not appear in SMS Menu.

Templates

Create and send a message using S! Mail or SMS template.

- 1 Press  and select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates*
- 2 Highlight an S! Mail or SMS template
- 3 Select *Menu* → *Send*
- 4 Create a message and press  (Send)

Tip

- **To use after viewing an S! Mail template**

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② *Menu* → *View*
- ③ *Menu* → *Play* as required
- ④ *Menu* → *Edit and send*

- **To register a template** (P.4-16, 19-20)

Attaching/Inserting Files

A file that can be attached/inserted to an S! Mail is limited in size to 294KB including the message address, subject and message text size. Up to 20 files can be attached to one S! Mail.

Tip

- **To check the size of a message being created**

Select *S! Mail* as the type of the message, the message size appears in the upper-right corner.

Note

- **Note that some recipients may not be able to receive attachment or inserted files.**
- **When attaching/inserting a video to/into an S! Mail, select a file recorded with Limit for S! Mail (☞ P.8-15). When trying to attach/insert a video that cannot be sent, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be attached.**

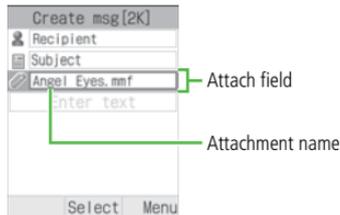
Message Field Files

Attach images, video, and/or sounds saved in Data Folder to a message, as well as any contents saved in Phonebook, Calendar and My Phonebook Details (converted as vCard format or vCalendar format). If you insert a file in Message field, display/play the file when you view the Message window.

Attaching a File

- 1 **In Message creation window, Select Attach field**

2 Attach file



Message Creation Window
(File Attached)

To attach file

- ① Select *Data Folder*
- ② Select a file from Data Folder

To attach Phonebook data as vCard file

- ① Select *Phonebook details*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➡P.5-10)
- ③ Press  (Add)

To attach Calendar items as vCalendar file

- ① Select *Calendar item*
- ② Select the items

To attach My Phonebook Details data as vCard file

- ① Select *My phonebook details*
- ②  (Add)

Tip

- **To add a file**
Perform Step 1 to 2 in "Attaching a file" (➡P.18-15)
- **To check an attachment**
 - ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Menu* → *View attachment*
 - ② Select a file
- **If you attach a file**
File type indicator and file name appears in Attach field.

 : Image	 : Sound
 : Video	 : vCalendar
 : vCard	 : File other than above
- **To replace a file**
 - ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Menu* → *View attachment*
 - ② Highlight a file and select *Menu* → *Replace*
 - ③ Perform Step 2 in "Attaching a file" (➡P.18-15)

- **To delete a file**

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Menu* → *View attachment*
- ② Highlight a file and select *Menu* → *Remove* → *Selected*

- **To delete all files**

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Menu* → *View attachment*
- ② *Menu* → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes*

- **When files saved in Memory Card is attached**

Removing Memory Card shows the message indicating the S! Mail is saved to Drafts; 8055C returns to Messaging menu. The saved S! Mail in Drafts has no attachment.

Note

- **For items in My Phonebook Details, Caller ID and Hobby cannot be attached.**

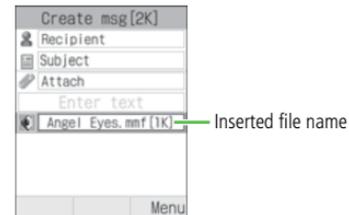
Inserting a File

1 In Message creation window, select *Menu* → *Insert*

To insert a file with Slide Show set (⊕P.18-12)

- ① In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field to insert a file
- ② *Menu* → *Insert*

2 Select file to insert



Message Creation
Window (File Inserted)

To insert an image

- ① Select *Image*
- ② Select an image from Data Folder

To insert sound

- ① Select *Sound*
- ② Select sound from Data Folder

To insert a video

- ① Select *Video*
- ② Select a movie from Data Folder

Tip

- **To preview an inserted file**

- ① *Menu* → *Preview*
- ② *Menu* → *Play*

- **If you insert a file**

In Message creation window, file type indicator, file name, and file size is displayed in Text entry field. If you inserted an image with no restriction, the image will be shown in reduced size instead of the icon.

 : Images that cannot be displayed because of Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained

 : Sound

 : Video

- **To replace a file**

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
- ② *Menu* → *Replace*
- ③ Select a file

- **To delete a file**

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
- ② *Menu* → *Remove* → *Yes*

- **To insert a file where another is inserted**

A new Slide Show page is added automatically and the file is inserted. In case of an image file and sound file, both can be inserted on the same page.

- **When files saved in Memory Card is inserted**

Removing Memory Card shows the message indicating the S! Mail is saved to Drafts; 805SC returns to Messaging menu. The saved S! Mail in Drafts has no inserted file.

Creating & Inserting a File

While creating a message, create a file and insert it. When Message window is opened, inserted file appears/plays.

1 In Message creation window, select *Menu* → *Create & Insert*

To insert a file with Slide Show set

- ① In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field where a file to be inserted
- ② *Menu* → *Create & Insert*

2 Select a creation method and insert a file

To capture a photograph

- ① Select *Take picture*
- ② Press  (Take)
- ③ Press  (Add)

To record video

- ① Select *Record video*
- ② Press  (Record)
- ③ Press  (Stop)
- ④ Select *Add*

To record sound

- ① Select *Record sound*
- ② Press  (Record)
- ③ Press  (Stop)
- ④ *Menu* → *Add to message*

Tip

- **If you insert a file**
805SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➔P.18-18).
- **To insert a file where another file has already been inserted**
805SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➔P.18-18).
- **To replace or delete a file**
Perform operations the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➔P.18-18).

- Operations before and after capturing a still image (⇒P.8-5)
- Operations before and after recording video (⇒P.8-12)
- Operations before and after recording sound (⇒P.15-15)

Saving Created Messages

Save to Drafts

When message creation is interrupted before completion, etc., save the message being created to Drafts.

1 In Message creation window, select *Menu* → *Save to Drafts*

Tip

- When  /  /  is pressed on Message creation window

When  ,  , or  is pressed after entering address, subject or text, or attaching or inserting a file, a message appears asking whether to finish creating the message. Select *Yes* to save the created message to Drafts.

Note

- *Save to Drafts* appears in *Menu* after address, subject or text has been entered or a file is attached/inserted.

Save as a Template

By saving a message with fixed contents, etc. as an S! Mail templates, new S! Mail can be easily created and sent.

1 In Message creation window,
highlight **Attach** or **Text entry** field

2 Select *Menu* → *Save as template*

Note

- *Save as template* appears in *Menu* only when a subject is entered or the message is longer than SMS, or when a file is inserted.

Messaging Folders

Viewing Messages	19-2	Using an Attachment	19-13
Message Lists	19-2	Viewing an Attachment	19-13
Message Window Operations.....	19-5	Saving Attachments to Data Folder	19-14
Replying to a Message	19-7	Managing Folders	19-15
Forwarding a Message	19-8	Create Folder	19-15
Sending from Drafts	19-8	Edit Folder.....	19-15
Sending from Unsent Messages	19-9	Security ON/OFF	19-15
Deleting a Message	19-9	Moving Messages	19-16
Deleting Specified Message(s).....	19-9	Distribution Rule	19-16
Designating & Deleting a Mailbox	19-10	Delete Folder.....	19-17
Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox.....	19-11	From Message List	19-18
Linked Information	19-11	Saving to Phonebook	19-18
Saving to Phonebook.....	19-12	Sorting Messages	19-18
Saving as a Bookmark.....	19-12	Move to Phone/Move to USIM.....	19-19
Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Accessing the Web	19-12	Saving an S! Mail Template	19-20
		Message List Menu	19-21

Viewing Messages

Five mailboxes are created on 8055C.

Mailbox	Message type
Received msgs	Received messages.
Drafts	Message drafts saved before completion.
Unsent msgs	Messages unsent because of failure or cancellation, or waiting to be sent.
Sent msgs	Messages already sent.
Templates	S! Mail or SMS saved as templates.

Tip

- To check message memory status
 - ① Press 
 - ② Select *Memory status*
 - ③ Select *SMS, S! Mail (By count)*, or *S! Mail (By size)*
- To create a personal folder in Received msgs (➔P.19-15)

Note

- When adding a new SMS to Drafts, Unsent msgs, or Sent msgs cause the maximum number of allowed message to be exceeded, the oldest SMS is deleted automatically.

Message Lists

From list of *Received msgs* or *Unsent msgs*, view the messages.

1 Press 

2 Select *Received msgs* or *Unsent msgs*



Received msgs	
Aida Natsu 7058	
next meeting 06/15 18:41	
Takeda Shoh. 8728	
This weekend 06/15 10:41	
Aida Natsu 8648	
Sorry 06/14 14:43	
Kawai Ayami 7818	
Hello 06/13 12:02	
Select	Menu

Received Message List

From a personal folder in Received msgs

Select a folder; then Phone Password entry window appears, enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)

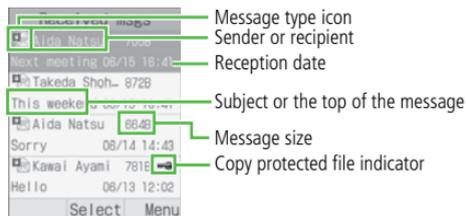
3 Select a message

Tip

- In Message window, press  or  Switch between previous and next window.
- When pressing Side Keys   in SMS window Press Side Key  to enlarge font size; press Side Key  to reduce font size.
- To view a sent message
 - ① In Step 2, select *Sent msgs*
 - ② Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *View*
- To view S! Mail details
In Step 3, highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Details*

Message List Window

The following information appears in lists for each Messaging folder.



Received Message List

Tip

- **Received Message Indicators**

- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: High)
- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low)
- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: High)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: Low)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : Read S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)

- : Unread reception notification (Priority: High)
- : Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)
- : Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)
- : Read reception notification (Priority: High)
- : Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)
- : Read reception notification (Priority: Low)
- : Unread SMS
- : Read SMS
- : Unread SMS (saved in USIM Card)
- : Read SMS (saved in USIM Card)
- : Unread S! Mail Delivery Report
- : Read S! Mail Delivery Report
- : Unread SMS Delivery Report
- : Read SMS Delivery Report
- : Receiving S! Mail

- **Draft Message Indicators**

- : S! Mail (Priority: High)
- : S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
- : S! Mail (Priority: Low)
- : S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)
- : SMS

- **Unsent Message Indicators**

- : S! Mail
- : S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)
- : SMS
- : Sending S! Mail

- **Sent Message Indicators**

- : S! Mail
- : S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)
- : SMS
- : SMS (saved in USIM Card)

- **Copy protected file indicators**

Attached/inserted Copy protected file indicators

- : Transferable, Content Key has already been purchased
- : Transferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
- : Nontransferable, Content Key has already been purchased
- : Nontransferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained

- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide***

Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *Secret - On* for message receiver/sender information; only the number or mail addresses appear (instead of the name).

Message Window Operations

Saving to Phonebook

Save phone number/mail address of the sender/recipient to Phonebook while viewing Message window (Received)/Reception notification window.

1 In Message window, select *Menu* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*

2 Select saving method

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

① Select *Update*

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞P.5-10)

3 Select an icon

4 Add additional items as required (☞P.5-4)

5 Press (Save)

Note

- When an underlined phone number, mail address or URL is highlighted in a message window, *Add to Phonebook* does not appear in *Menu*.

Saving as an S! Mail Template

Save received or sent S! Mail as an S! Mail template.

- 1 In Message window, select *Menu* → *Save as S! Mail template*

Tip

- If a message appears indicating name duplication
 - 1 Press 
 - 2 Press  (Select) and enter the name
 - 3 Press  (Save)
- When a name entry window appears
 - 1 Press  (Select) and enter the name
 - 2 Press  (Save)

Note

- While viewing S! Mail sent via PC, etc., *Save as S! Mail template* does not appear in *Menu*.

Message Window Menu

Item	Description
Reply to all	Reply to all recipients entered in S! Mail.
Forward	Forward received message.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Delete	Delete displayed messages.
Save as S! Mail template	Add displayed S! Mail as an S! Mail template (➔P.19-6).
Save items	Save files attached or inserted in an S! Mail to Data Folder (➔P.19-14).
Copy	Copy the specified part from Address list, Subject or Text (➔P.4-11).
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.19-5).

Item	Description
Play	Play Slide Show, inserted video, or sound (P.18-5).
Details	Confirm S! Mail size, etc.
3D Pict. Disp.	Display a message in 3D Pictogram (P.21-6).
Move to Phone/ USIM	Move an SMS received or being sent to handset or USIM Card (P.19-19).

Replying to a Message

1 Press (Reply) on the Message window

To reply to all recipients entered in the S! Mail
In Message window, select *Menu* → *Reply to all*

2 Create a message and press (Send)

Tip

- **The subject of message replies**
The subject of an S! Mail reply is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.
- **While *Reply with text is On***
Under two line breaks, received message text is automatically entered in Text entry field.

Note

- If shared memory (P.26-14) is less than 464KB, you cannot reply to a message. To reply to the message, delete messages.

Forwarding a Message

Forward a received or sent message to another recipient.

- 1 Press  and select *Received msgs* or *Sent msgs*
- 2 Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Forward*
- 3 Create a message and press  (Send)

Tip

- **The subject of forwarded messages**
The subject of a forwarded S! Mail is prefixed with "FW:" automatically.

Note

- If shared memory (P.26-14) is less than 464KB, you cannot forward a message. To forward the message, delete messages.

Sending from Drafts

- 1 Press  and select *Drafts*
- 2 Highlight a message and press  (Send)

When *Send* does not appear

- ① Press  (Edit)
- ② Enter address and press  (Send)

Sending from Unsent Messages

Send messages directly from Unsent Messages.

1 Press  and select *Unsent msgs*

2 Highlight a message and press  (Send)

To send after modifying

- ① Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Edit*
- ② Edit the message and press  (Send)

Deleting a Message

Deleting Specified Message(s)

Delete multiple specified messages. Alternatively, specify and delete saved templates.

1 Press 

2 Select a mailbox

To delete a saved S! Mail or SMS templates
Select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates*

3 Delete a Message or Template

To delete one message or template

- ① Highlight a message or template
- ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple messages or templates

- ① *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- ② Check a message or template to delete
- ③ Repeat step ② to check all of the target messages or templates
- ④ Press  (Delete) and proceed to step ⑥ when all are not checked
- ⑤ Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- ⑥ Select *Yes*

Tip

- **To view the contents of multiple messages or S! Mail templates while selecting them**
 - ① Repeat Steps 1 and 2
 - ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - ③ Highlight a message or S! Mail template, select *Menu* → *View*
- **To collectively select/deselect multiple messages or S! Mail templates**
 - ① Repeat Steps 1 and 2
 - ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - ③ *Menu* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*
- **To collectively select/deselect multiple SMS templates**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - ③ Press  (Mark all/Unmark all)

Note

- **While highlighting an S! Mail template designated as default, *Delete* does not appear in *Menu*.**

Designating & Deleting a Mailbox

- 1 Press  to select *Settings* → *Delete all*
- 2 Check a mailbox to delete
- 3 Repeat Step 2 to check all target mailboxes
- 4 Press  (Delete)
- 5 Enter Phone Password, and press  (Confirm) to select *Yes*

Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox

Delete saved templates all at once.

1 Press 

2 Select a mailbox

To delete an S! Mail or SMS template

Select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates*

3 Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*

4 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Note

- Personal folders cannot be deleted by this operation. To delete Personal folders, select *Messaging* → *Settings* → *Delete all*
- You cannot delete the S! Mail template designated as the default.

Linked Information

If Message window or Notification details window contains an underlined number, mail address, or URL; save it to Phonebook or use it to place a call, send messages, save bookmark, or access the site.

As linked information, following number of characters can be recognized for each S! Mail Font size setting:

Maximum of 45 lines (1,035 characters) for *Standard*, 54 lines (1,026 characters) for *Large*, and 41 lines (1,025 characters) for *Small*.

Saving to Phonebook

1 In Message window, select a phone number, mail address, or URL and select *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*

2 Select saving method

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

① Select *Update*

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞P.5-10)

3 Select an icon

4 Add additional items as required (☞P.5-4)

5 Press  (Save)

Note

- If URL is selected, *USIM* is unselectable in Step 1.

Saving as a Bookmark

1 In Message window, select a URL and select *Bookmarks*

2 Press  (Select) to enter a title and press  (Save)

Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Accessing the Web

Use phone number/mail address/URL information in Message window or Notification details window.

1 In Message window, use the available links

To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select *Voice call*

To initiate a Video Call

Select a phone number and select *Video call*

To create and send a message

① Select a phone number or mail address and select

Create msg

② Create a message and press  (Send)

To access the Web

Select URL and select *Go to URL*

Tip

- **Operations in Notification details window**

Phone number/mail address/URL information except in *From* (other party's phone number) can be used.

Using an Attachment

Viewing an Attachment

Open images/play sounds attached to S! Mail. For vCard/vCalendar, open Details to see contents.

1 Select a file and select *Open file*

Tip

- **To save a file in Data Folder directly**
In Message window, select a file → *Save item*
- **To save vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar directly**
In Message window, select a file → *Register to phonebook* or *Register to calendar*
- **To save vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar after viewing**
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Press  (Register)

- **When a file requiring Content Key is attached**

If you perform Step 1, a message appears and you cannot open the file. To view the file, select *Save item* in Step 1 to save and purchase/obtain Content Key from Data Folder (P.12-15).

- **When an attachment has a restriction (only one time playback allowed)**

When you perform Step 1, a message appears notifying you that only one time playback is allowed.

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save S! Mail attachment/inserted files to 805SC.

1 In Message window, select *Menu* → *Save items*

2 Perform file selection operation

To select and save one file

- ① Highlight a file
- ② Press  (Select) or select *Menu* → *Selected*

To select and save multiple files

- ① *Menu* → *Multiple*
- ② Check the files to save
- ③ Repeat step ② to check all target files
- ④ Press  (Save)

To save all files

Menu → *All*

Tip

- To select or deselect multiple files at once

- ① In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Multiple*
- ② Press  (Mark all/Unmark all)

- When a popup message appears indicating the file name is a duplicate while saving

- ① Press 
- ② Press  (Select) and change the file name
- ③ Press  (Save)

Note

- When a file is highlighted in Message window, *Save items* does not appear in *Menu*.

Managing Folders

Create personal folders in Received msgs; organize messages by message type. Activate Security for personal folders.

Create Folder

- 1 Press  and select *Received msgs*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Create folder*
- 3 Enter a name

Edit Folder

Change personal folder names.

- 1 Press  and select *Received msgs*
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Edit folder*
- 3 Enter a name

Security ON/OFF

Activate Security to require Phone Password entry to open a personal folder.

- 1 Press  and select *Received msgs*
- 2 Highlight a folder, select *Menu* → *Security ON/OFF*
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm), then select *Yes*

Tip

- **Secure Folders**
 appears.
- **When a Secure Folders is selected**
Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password and press ; Message list appears.

Moving Messages

1 Press and select *Received msgs*

To move messages from a personal folder

Select the personal folder

2 Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Move* → *Selected*

To move multiple messages

① Select *Multiple*

② Check messages to move and press  (Move)

3 Select a destination folder

To return messages to *Received msgs*

Select *Received msgs*

Distribution Rule

Sort and save the received messages automatically by sender's phone number, mail address, etc. to the specified folders. Subjects in S! Mail or text in SMS can also be used as a sorting rule. Up to 20 rules can be set per folder.

1 Press and select *Received msgs*

2 Highlight a folder and select *Menu* → *Distribution rule*

3 Perform operations to set rules

To set phonebook entry as a rule

① Select Blank field and select *Sender* →

From phonebook

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-10)

③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press  (Select)

To enter phone number/mail address directly

① Select Blank field and select *Sender* →
Enter Sender

② Enter a phone number or mail address

To set phonebook category as a rule

① Select Blank field and select *Sender* →
From category

② Highlight a category and press  (Select)
Categories saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

To set text as a rule

① Select Blank field and select *Subject*
② Enter text to set as a rule

4 Press  (Done)**Tip****• To change saved rules**

- ① After Step 2, highlight a field to change and select *Menu* →
Replace rule
- ② Repeat Steps 3 and 4

• To delete saved rules

After Step 2, highlight a field to delete and select *Menu* →
Delete

• To delete all saved rules

After Step 2, highlight a field to delete and select *Menu* →
Delete all → *Yes*

Delete Folder

- 1** Press  and select *Received msgs*
- 2** Highlight a personal folder, select
Menu → *Delete folder*
- 3** Enter Phone Password and press
 (Confirm)
- 4** Select *Yes*

From Message List

Saving to Phonebook

- 1 Press  and select *Received msgs*, *Unsent msgs* or *Sent msgs*
- 2 Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Add to Phonebook*
- 3 Select a phone number or mail address and select *Phone* or *USIM*
- 4 Select saving method
 - To save as a new entry
Select *New*
 - To save to an existing entry
 - ① Select *Update*
 - ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (⊕P.5-10)
- 5 Select an icon

- 6 Add additional items as required (⊕P.5-4)

- 7 Press  (Save)

Sorting Messages

Available sorting types to display vary by Message list window of the mailbox.

- 1 In Message list window, highlight a message and select *Menu* → *Sort by*
- 2 Select an item
 - To sort in descending order of date
Select *Date*
 - To sort by sender
Select *Sender*
 - To sort by recipient
Select *Recipient*

To view read and unread messages separately

Select *Unread to read* or *Read to unread*

To view messages separately by type

Select *Message type*

To sort by subject

Select *Subject*

To sort in descending order of message size

Select *Size*

Tip

- **Listing order when selecting *Message type***

SMS → S! Mail (Including message notification) → SMS saved in USIM Card.

- ***Sender, Recipient, or Subject list order***

Single-byte symbol → single-byte number → single-byte alphabet → single-byte Katakana → double-byte symbol → double-byte Hiragana → double-byte Katakana → Kanji → double-byte number → double-byte alphabet. But if *Subject* is selected, messages with no subject are listed at the top.

Move to Phone/Move to USIM

Move received SMS or sent SMS.

Save up to ten messages to USIM Card.

1 Press  and select *Received msgs* or *Sent msgs*

2 Move messages

To move from USIM Card to 805SC

① Highlight an SMS saved on USIM Card

② *Menu* → *Move to phone*

To move from 805SC to USIM Card

① Highlight an SMS saved in 805SC

② *Menu* → *Move to USIM*

Tip

- **Message List SMS Indicators**

- ✉ : Unread SMS
- ✉ : Read SMS
- ✉ : Unread SMS (USIM Card)
- ✉ : Read SMS (USIM Card)
- ✉ : Sent SMS
- ✉ : Sent SMS (USIM Card)

- **When moving received SMS from personal folders to USIM Card**

A confirmation appears. Select *Yes* to complete the move.

Saving an S! Mail Template

For more information about saving an SMS template, see "SMS Templates" (☞P.4-16).

1 Press  and select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates*

2 Select *Menu* → *Add new*

3 Select **Subject field** or **Text entry field** and enter a subject or message

4 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **To view an S! Mail template being created**

In Step 3, select *Menu* → *Preview*

- **To display and view an S! Mail template**

In Step 2, highlight an S! Mail template, select *Menu* → *View*

- **To modify an S! Mail template**

- ① In Step 2, select a saved S! Mail template and perform modification operation
- ② Press  (Save)

- **To delete an S! Mail template**

Perform the same operation as for a message (☞P.19-9).

- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (☞P.4-11)**

- **To use contents of an SMS template or Phonebook (☞P.4-10)**

- **To change font size**

- ① In Step 3, select Text entry field, select *Menu* → *Font Size*
- ② Select any of *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*

- **To set/release the prediction entry function (P.4-13)**

- **Setting Slide Show/inserting a file**

- ① In Step 3, select *Menu* → *Insert* or *Create & Insert*
- ② Perform setting, attaching, or inserting operation (P.18-12, 18-15, 18-19)

- **To view a text in 3D Pictogram**

In Step 3, highlight Text entry field, select *Menu* → *3D Pict. Disp.*

Message List Menu

Item	Description
Retrieve	Retrieve complete S! Mail from Mail Server.
Reply	Reply to the sender (P.19-7).
Reply to all	Reply to all recipients entered in S! Mail (P.19-7).
Forward	Forward received message (P.19-8).
Move	Move received mails to a personal folder (P.19-16).
Create folder	Create a personal folder (P.19-15).
Distribution rule	Save received messages to the specified folders automatically (P.19-16).
Edit folder	Change personal folder name (P.19-15).
Security ON/OFF	With Security activated, enter Phone Password to check mails in a personal folder (P.19-15).
Delete folder	Delete a personal folder (P.19-17).
View	Open sent messages or S! Mail templates (P.19-3, 19-20).
Edit	Edit and send unsent message (P.19-8).

Item	Description
Delete	Delete messages or templates (➔P.19-9, 19-11).
Move to phone/ Move to USIM	Move SMS between 8055C and USIM Card (➔P.19-19).
Sort by	Sort messages in Message List window (➔P.19-18).
Message list view	Select window type for Message List (➔21-7).
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.19-18).
Details	Check memory status in a personal folder or confirm S! Mail size, etc.
Cancel retrieving	Stop message retrieval from Mail Server.
Send	Send message using S! Mail template or SMS template (➔P.18-14).
Add new	Save a new S! Mail template or SMS template (➔P.4-16, 19-20).

Tip

- **Message List View setting changed via Menu becomes invalid when Message list window is closed.**

Server Mail

Message List	20-2
Acquire Mail List.....	20-2
Download.....	20-2
Delete	20-2
Remote Forward	20-3

Message List

View Mail Server message list. Retrieve, forward, or delete messages.

Acquire Mail List

- 1 Press  and select *Server mail box*
- 2 Select *Acquire Mail List*

Tip

- To check Mail Server usage state
 - ① In Step 2, select *Server mail volume*
 - ② Press  (Update) and select *Yes* to update to the latest information

Download

- 1 Press  and select *Server mail box*
- 2 Select *Mail List*
- 3 Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Download*

Tip

- To receive all messages from Message list window
In Step 2, select *Retrieve All Mails*

Delete

- 1 Press  and select *Server mail box*
- 2 Select *Mail List*
- 3 Delete unwanted messages

To delete one message

- ① Highlight a message
- ② Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple messages

- ① Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- ② Check a message to delete
- ③ Repeat step ② to check all target messages to delete
- ④ Press  (Delete) and go to step ⑥ if unmarking all
- ⑤ Enter Phone Password and press  (Confirm)
- ⑥ Select *Yes*

To delete all messages

- ① Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*
- ② Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple messages at once**

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- ③ Select *Menu* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*

Remote Forward

Forward a message from Mail Server to another address. Contents except the address are sent without modification.

- 1 Press  and select *Server mail box*
- 2 Select *Mail List*
- 3 Highlight a message, select *Menu* → *Server mail forward*

4 Enter an address

To directly enter an address

- ① Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*
- ② Enter a phone number or mail address

To enter an address using a log

Select Entry field and select a displayed log entry

To select an address from Phonebook

- ① Select Entry field and select *From Phonebook*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-10)
- ③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press  (Select)

To select an address via Phonebook category

- ① Select Entry field and select *From Category*
- ② Select a Category, with/without an Address selection window, highlight an address and press  (Select)

5 Select *Menu* → *Send*

Tip

- **Message subject**

Forwarded message Subject is automatically prefixed with "FW:".

- **To set other sending options for a message**

- ① In Step 5, select *Menu* → *Sending options*
- ② Select an item and perform operations to set (➔P.21-2)
- ③ Press  (Apply)

- **To delete an address**

In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select *Menu* → *Remove*

- **To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc**

- ① In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select *Menu* → *Change recipients*
- ② Select any of *To*, *Cc*, or *Bcc*

Other Message Settings

Customizing Handset Address	21-2
S! Mail Settings	21-2
Sending Settings.....	21-2
Receiving Settings.....	21-3
Message Size.....	21-3
Default Style	21-4
SMS Settings.....	21-5
3D Pictogram Settings.....	21-6
Message Notice View.....	21-7
Message List View	21-7
Reply with text	21-7

Customizing Handset Address

Change your mail address (alphanumerics before @) used for sending and receiving S! Mail to/from PC, etc. The default account name consists of random alphanumerics.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Mail Address Setting*

2 Follow onscreen instructions

S! Mail Settings

Sending Settings

Default Setting ■ Priority: Normal ■ Expiration: Maximum
■ Delivery: Immediately
■ Request delivery report: Unchecked

Set Sending options. Alternatively, set options for each S! Mail to send (➔P.18-11).

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Sending options*

2 Select an item

Message priority

- 1 Select *Priority*
- 2 Select a level and press 

Mail Server Retention Period (before expiry)

- 1 Select *Expiration*
- 2 Select an item and enter a time if you selected *Custom time (Hour)*
- 3 Press 

Mail Server Retention Period (before delivery)

- 1 Select *Delivery*
- 2 Select an item and press 

Delivery report request

Check *Request delivery report*

3 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **When retention set in *Expiration* expires**
The S! Mail is deleted automatically from Mail Server.
- **When retention is set in *Delivery***
When the specified time has elapsed, the S! Mail is sent from Mail Server.
- **When *Request delivery report* is checked**
When an S! Mail is sent from Mail Server, a distribution report is sent to your handset.

Receiving Settings

Default Setting ■ Auto download

Set Receiving options.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Receiving options*
- 2 Select an item
- 3 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **Receiving options Items**
Auto download : Receive automatically.
Manual : Receive only reception notification.

Message Size

Default Setting ■ 300KB

Cancel outgoing messages exceeding specified size.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Message size*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Default Style

- Default Setting
- Font color: Black ■ Font size: Large
 - Background color: White
 - Slide interval: Custom time (3 seconds)

Set font color, font style, background color, and Slide Show time intervals. Alternatively, change display settings for each S! Mail sent (➔P.18-13).

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Default style*

2 Set items

Font color

- ① Select *Font colour*
- ② Use  to highlight a color and press 

Font size

- ① Select *Font Size*
- ② Select an item and press 

Background color

- ① Select *Background colour*
- ② Use  to highlight a color and press 

Slide Show time intervals

- ① Select *Slide interval*
- ② Select an item, with *Custom time (seconds)*, enter a time
- ③ Press 

3 Press  (Save)

SMS Settings

- Default Setting
- Delivery report: Off
 - Center address: +819066519300
 - Character support: Automatic

Set Sending options. Alternatively, set options for each SMS message to send (➡P.18-11).

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *SMS*

2 Set items

Delivery Report

- ① Select *Delivery report*
- ② Select an item and press  (Select)

Center Address

- ① Select *Centre address*
- ② Highlight an item to set and press &  (Select)
- ③ Enter Center Address

Character encoding

- ① Select *Character support*
- ② Select an item and press  (Select)

3 Press  (Save)

Tip

- **When *Delivery report* is checked**
When an SMS is sent from Mail Server, a delivery report is sent to your handset.
- **To edit Center Address**
 - ① After Step 2, highlight Center Address to edit
 - ② Press  (Edit)
 - ③ Edit Center Address and press  (Save)

Note

- **Do not change Center Address unless instructed by SoftBank.**

3D Pictogram Settings

- Default Setting
- Display type: OFF
 - Background: Pattern 1
 - Running Speed: Normal

Animate text, pictograms or emoticons in message text.
Activate/cancel 3D Pictogram; set background color/speed.

1 Press  and select *Settings* →
General → *3D pictogram*

2 Set items

3D Pictogram

- ① Select *Display type*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

Background & font colors

- ① Select *Background*
- ② Press , select a pattern and press  (Save)

Running speed

- ① Select *Running speed*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

Tip

- *Display type Items*

- Always* : Use 3D Pictogram when viewing every message.
- New mails only* : Use 3D Pictogram only when viewing an unread message.
- OFF* : Not use 3D Pictogram.

Note

- Mail attachments, such as slide shows, may not appear properly in 3D Pictogram.

Message Notice View

Default Setting ■ Sender

Select *Sender*, *Subject*, *Sender & Subject* or *Off* for incoming message notices appearing at top of Display.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *General* → *Message notice view*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Message List View

Default Setting ■ 2 line

Select the setting from *2 line*, *1 line (subject)* or *1 line (sender)*.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *General* → *Message list view*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Reply with text

Default Setting ■ Off

Activate to include original message text in Reply.

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *General* → *Reply with text*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Tip

- *Reply with text* Items
 - On* : Reply with text including received message text.
 - Off* : Reply with text not including received message text.

Mobile Internet

Getting Started	22-2
Getting Online	22-3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	22-3
PC Site Browser Main Menu.....	22-4
Warning Message	22-5
Page Window Operations	22-6
Using Linked Info.....	22-8

Getting Started

Web

Access Mobile Internet or Internet sites from 805SC.

Browse sites or download image or sound files, etc.

A separate subscription is required for Web service.

Accessing via Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Select Yahoo! Keitai main menu items to access various contents.

Accessing via PC Site Browser Main Menu

Select PC Site Browser main menu items to access various contents.

Internet Accessing

Enter a URL and access pages.

SSL/TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on 805SC (P.23-14, 24-5).

SSL/TLS Precautions

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrustrad Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Inc., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved here. Cache remains even after a session ends or 805SC is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones. When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest version, reload the page (➔P.23-14).

Tip

- **To manually delete Cache contents (➔P.24-6)**
- **When another USIM Card is inserted into 805SC**
Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- **When a page with an expiry date is saved**
Page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Getting Online

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu

1 Press 

2 Select an item

Tip

- **When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time**
After Step 1, Time & date settings window appears; set time & date to display Information window.
- **To switch to Information window for PC Site Browser**
In Information window for Yahoo! Keitai, select *Menu* → *Switch to PC site browser* → *Yes*

Enter URL

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* →
Enter URL
- 2 Select URL field and enter a URL
- 3 Press  (Go to)

Tip

- To save the entered URL as a bookmark
 - ① In Step 2, check *Add to Bookmarks*
 - ② Select Title field and enter title
 - ③ Press  (Go to)
- To access a page from the access history (⇒P.23-12)

PC Site Browser Main Menu

Access PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser main menu.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* →
PC site browser
- 2 Select an item and press  (Go to/Select)
- 3 Select *Yes*

Tip

- When activating PC Site Browser
 appears at the top of Display.
- To change view mode from Information window
After Step 2, select *Menu* → *Small screen or PC screen*
- Operations from Menu (⇒P.23-15)
- In PC Site Browser, downloading data except document files or streaming is unavailable.
- Some sites may not be displayed correctly.

- **To switch to Information window for Yahoo! Keitai**
In Information window for PC Site Browser, select *Menu* → *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → *Yes*

Note

- Viewing a site with large data may incur high charges.

Enter URL

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Enter URL*
- 2 Select URL field and enter a URL
- 3 Press  (Go to)
- 4 Select *Yes*

Tip

- **To save the entered URL as a bookmark**
 - ① In Step 2, check *Add to Bookmarks*
 - ② Select Title field and enter title
 - ③ Press  (Go to)

Warning Message

- Default Setting
- PC site browser: On
 - Yahoo! Keitai: On

Set whether or not to display Warning message when switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser or activating PC Site Browser.

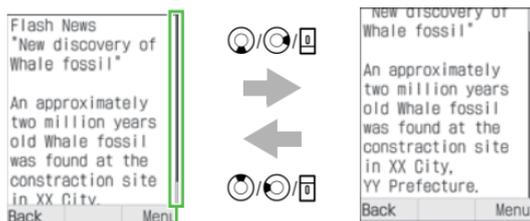
- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *PC site browser settings*
- 2 Select *Warning message*
- 3 Select an item and press  (Save)

Page Window Operations

Operations on pages are as follows.

Scrolling

Scroll bar appears when page content extends beyond current view.



Scroll bar

: Scroll down by one line

When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use  to scroll right.

: Scroll up by one line

When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use  to scroll left.

Side Key : Scroll page down by multiple lines

Side Key : Scroll page up by multiple lines

Moving Cursor

When selecting an item such as link, move cursor to that item.



: When items are listed vertically, move cursor down.

When the page is already scrolled to the bottom, alternatively, press Side Key  to move cursor down.

: When items are listed vertically, move cursor up.

When the page is already scrolled to the top, alternatively, press Side Key  to move cursor up.

Tip

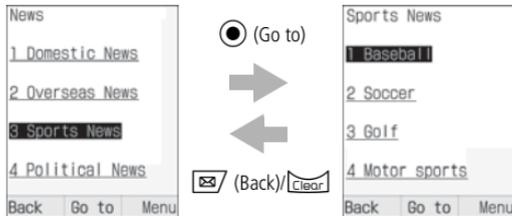
- **When items are listed in the same row**

Press  to move cursor right or left.

- **When you move cursor**

The selected item is highlighted or enclosed in a frame of dotted lines if it is link to another page.

Previous or Next Page



Highlight link, etc. and press  (Go to): Display the next page

Alternatively, select *Menu* → *Forward* to change the window

 (Back) or : Display the previous page

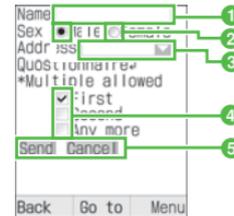
Tip

- If  (Back)/ is pressed with no previous page

A message appears asking whether to terminate the Web connection; select *Yes* to terminate the Web connection.

Text Entry & Item Selection

An information window may show fields and items below.



1 Text entry field

Enter data, certification passwords, etc.; highlight Text entry field, press  (Go to) and enter text

2 Radio button

Select one item only. Highlight an item with  and press  (Go to) to select it (.

3 Menu field

Open a menu and select an item. Highlight a menu, press  (Go to) to open it. Use  to highlight an item and press  to select it. If multiple items are selectable, press  to cancel all.

4 Check box

Select multiple items. Highlight an item with and press  to select it (Appearing as). To deselect an item, highlight and press .

5 Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button such as *send* or *reset*. Highlight a command button and press  (Go to) to execute the operation.

Note

- Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Using Linked Info

Use embedded phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs to initiate calls, create and send messages, or access web pages.

Available phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs are underlined.

Using Page Links

1 Open a page containing linked info

2 Use the available links

To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select *Voice Call*

To create and send messages

① Select a phone number or mail address and select

Create message

② Create messages and press  (Send)

To access another page

Select a URL

Saving to Phonebook

- 1 Open a page with linked number or address
- 2 Select a number or address and select *Save Number* or *Save Address* →
Phone or *USIM*
- 3 Select saving method
 - To save as a new entry
Select *New*
 - To add to an existing entry
 - ① Select *Update*
 - ② Search for an existing entry to modify (☞P.5-10)
- 4 Select an icon
- 5 Add additional items as required
(☞P.5-4)
- 6 Press  (Save)

Mobile Internet Files

Using Image Files	23-2	Opening a Bookmark.....	23-10
Saving Images to Data Folder.....	23-2	Editing Bookmarks	23-10
Wallpaper.....	23-4	Moving a Bookmark	23-11
Using Sound Files	23-4	Deleting a Bookmark.....	23-11
Playing Sound.....	23-4	History	23-12
Saving Sound Files to Data Folder	23-4	Display Settings	23-13
Using Video Files	23-6	Rendering	23-13
Playing a Video.....	23-6	Search Text	23-13
Saving Videos to Data Folder.....	23-6	Copy Text.....	23-13
Streaming	23-8	Reload	23-14
Saving Pages	23-8	Page Details	23-14
Saving a Page.....	23-8	Send URL	23-14
Opening a Saved Page	23-8	Server Certificate.....	23-14
Change Title	23-8	Returning to Default Page	23-15
Deleting a Saved Page	23-9	Encoding.....	23-15
Saving Bookmarks	23-9	Information Window Menu.....	23-15
Saving as a Bookmark.....	23-9		

Using Image Files

Saving Images to Data Folder

Download and save images from page links.

Saving Images from Automatic Save-type Links

1 Open a page containing an image link

2 Select link

3 Press  (Go to)

4 Press 

To open saved image

Select *Play*

To set saved image as Wallpaper, etc.

Select *Set as* and perform Step 2 in "Wallpaper"

(☞12-11)

To check details on saved image

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

Saving Images from Manual Save-type Links

1 Open a page containing an image link

2 Select link

3 Press  (Go to)

4 Select *Save*

To check details on saved image

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

Saving Page Images

Save a page image to Data Folder.

- 1 Open a page with an image
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Save* → *Save items*
- 3 Highlight image and press  (Save)
- 4 Select *Save*
To open saved image
Select *Display*
- 5 Select *Exit* and press  to end the operation

To save another image

Repeat Step 3

Saving Page Background Images

- 1 Open a page with a background image
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Save* → *Save background image*
- 3 Select *Save*
To open saved background image
Select *Display*

Tip

- **If the same file name exists**
 - ① Press  (Edit) and change the file name
 - ② Press  (Save)
- **Viewing images**

Press  (Set as) to set Wallpaper (➔P.23-4).
Press  (FULL) then  (Zoom) to enlarge or reduce the image. Press  (Details) to view image details.
- **When SVG-T/SWF format file is saved**

Menu appears on the save image confirmation window, then select *Menu* and execute various operations (➔P.12-9).

Wallpaper

Set a saved image as Wallpaper.

- 1 **Open image to set as Wallpaper**
(☞P.23-3)
- 2 Press  (Set as)
- 3 To set saved image as Wallpaper, etc., perform Step 2 in Wallpaper (☞12-11)

Using Sound Files

Playing Sound

Play sounds from page links.

- 1 **Open a page containing link**
- 2 **Select link to sound**

Saving Sound Files to Data Folder

Download sound files from page links and save them to Data Folder.

Saving Sound from Automatic Save-type Links

- 1 **Open a page containing a sound link**
- 2 **Select link**
- 3 Press  (Go to)
- 4 Press 

To play saved sound

Select *Play*

To set saved sound as Ringtone

Select *Set as* and perform Step 3 in "Setting Sound File as Ringtone" (☞12-12)

To check detail on saved sound

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

Saving Sound from Manual Save-type Links

1 Open a page containing a sound link

2 Select link

3 Press  (Go to)

4 Select *Save*

To play saved sound

Select *Play*

To check details on saved sound

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

5 Select *Set as* to set saved sound as Ringtone and perform Step 3 in “Setting Sound File as Ringtone” (⇒12-12)

Saving Sound Being Played

Save background sound while viewing a page.

1 Open a page with sound

2 Select *Menu* → *Save* → *Save items*

3 Press  (Save)

To play saved sound

Select *Play*

To check details on saved sound

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

4 Select *Set as* to set saved sound as Ringtone and perform Step 3 in “Setting Sound File as Ringtone” (P.12-12)

Tip

- **If same file name exists**

- 1 Press  (Edit) and change the file name
- 2 Press  (Save)

- **To play sounds**

Press  (Set as) and set saved sound as Ringtone (P.12-12). For other operations, refer to *Media Player* (P.11-3).

Using Video Files

Playing a Video

Play video from a page link.

- 1 Open a page containing a video link
- 2 Select link

Saving Videos to Data Folder

Download and save videos from page links.

Saving Videos from Automatic Save-type Links

- 1 Open a page containing a video link
- 2 Select link
- 3 Press  (Go to)

4 Press

To play saved video

Select *Play*

To set saved video as Ringtone

Select *Set as* and perform Step 3 in "Setting Video File as Ringtone" (➤P.12-12)

To check details on saved video

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

4 Select *Save*

To play saved video

Select *Play*

To check details on saved video

Select *Details*

To return to the linked page

Select *Exit*

5 Select *Set as* to set as Ringtone, etc, and perform Step 2 in "Setting Video File as Ringtone" (➤12-12)

Saving Video from Manual Save-type Links

1 Open a page containing a video link

2 Select link

3 Press  (Go to)

Tip

- **If same file name exists**

- ① Press  (Edit) and change the file name
- ② Press  (Save)

- **To play video**

Press  (Set as) and set saved video as Ringtone (➤P.12-12). For other operations, refer to *Media Player* (➤P.11-11).

Streaming

Access compatible files via page links, etc. Downloaded content cannot be saved.

- 1 Open a page containing a streaming video link
- 2 Select link

Tip

- Streaming (☎11-17).

Saving Pages

Saving a Page

Save current page to open it at any time without accessing the Web. Save up to 50 pages.

- 1 Open a page

- 2 Select *Menu* → *Saved pages* → *Save*

- 3 Press  (Save)

To edit title

Press  (Edit) and enter title

Opening a Saved Page

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*

- 2 Select a page

Change Title

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*

- 2 Highlight a page, select *Menu* → *Rename*

- 3 Press  (Edit) and change the name

4 Press  (Save)

Deleting a Saved Page

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*

2 Delete as required

To delete one page

- 1 Highlight a page
- 2 *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple pages

- 1 *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- 2 Check a page to delete
- 3 Repeat step 2 to check all target pages
- 4 Press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all pages

- 1 *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (OK) and select *Yes*

Tip

- To select/deselect multiple pages at once
 - 1 In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - 2 *Menu* → *Mark all/Unmark all*
- If replacing USIM Card inserted when pages are saved with another one, *Saved pages* cannot be displayed.

Saving Bookmarks

Saving as a Bookmark

Bookmark frequently visited sites (URLs) for easier access. Save up to 30 Bookmarks.

1 Open a page

2 Select *Menu* → *Bookmarks* → *Add to Bookmarks*

3 Confirm Title and URL

To change the title/URL

- ① Select Title or URL field
- ② Change a Title or URL

4 Press (Save)

Tip

• To manually enter and save a bookmark

- ① Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*
- ② *Menu* → *Add to Bookmarks*
- ③ Select Subject field and enter a subject
- ④ Select URL field and enter a URL
- ⑤ Press  (Save)

Tip

• To send a bookmark via S! Mail

- ① In Step 2, highlight a bookmark, select *Menu* → *Send URL*
- ② Create a message and press  (Send)

Editing Bookmarks

Modify the title or URL of bookmark.

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Highlight a bookmark, select *Menu* → *Edit bookmark*

3 Select Title field or URL field, and modify the title or URL

4 Press  (Save)

Opening a Bookmark

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Select a bookmark

Moving a Bookmark

Move the selected bookmark.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*
- 2 Highlight the bookmark to move and select *Menu* → *Move*
- 3 Use  to move cursor to target location
- 4 Press  (Save)

Deleting a Bookmark

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Delete as required

To delete one bookmark

- ① Highlight a bookmark
- ② *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple bookmarks

- ① *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- ② Check a bookmark to delete
- ③ Repeat step ② to check all target bookmarks
- ④ Press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all bookmarks

- ① *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*
- ② Enter Phone Password, press  (OK) and select *Yes*

Tip

- To select/deselect multiple bookmarks at once
 - ① In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - ② *Menu* → *Mark all/Unmark all*

History

Holds up to 50 page URLs; open previously viewed pages.

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *History*

2 Use History records

To open a History record

Select URL

To delete a History record

- 1 Highlight the URL
- 2 *Menu* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple records

- 1 *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- 2 Check a record to delete
- 3 Repeat step 2 to check all target records
- 4 Press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all records

- 1 *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (OK) → *Yes*

To show URL details

- 1 Highlight URL
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Details*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple histories collectively**
 - 1 In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
 - 2 *Menu* → *Mark all/Unmark all*

Display Settings

Rendering

Default Setting ■ Standard

Set pages to match Display size or show only text.

- 1 Open a page
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Rendering*
- 3 Select an item

To open a page without changing its layout

Select *Wide*

To fit page to Display

Select *Standard*

To show page text only

Select *Simple*

Search Text

- 1 Open Information window
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Manage Content* → *Search text*
- 3 Select Text entry field and enter text
- 4 Select search direction and press  (Search)

Copy Text

- 1 Open Information window
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Copy text*
- 3 In a text entry window, select *Menu* → *Copy*

4 Use  to move cursor on the first character and press  (Start)

To copy all texts in text entry window

Press  (All) to copy

5 Use  to specify the range and press  (End)

Reload

1 Open a page

2 Select *Menu* → *Reload*

Page Details

View current page information including URL and Title.

1 Open a page

2 Select *Menu* → *Manage Content* → *Page details*

Send URL

Attach current page URL to a message and send it.

1 Open a page

2 Select *Menu* → *Manage Content* → *Send URL*

3 Create a message and press  (Send)

Server Certificate

View SSL/TLS server certificates.

1 Open a secure page

2 Select *Menu* → *Browser settings* → *Security settings* → *Certificates*

3 Select *Server certificate* and select a certificate

Tip

- When you open a page that uses SSL/TLS  appears at the top of Display.

Returning to Default Page

- 1 Open a page
- 2 From any page, select *Menu* → *Yahoo! Keitai*

Encoding

Default Setting ■ Auto

If page text appears garbled, change character encoding.

- 1 Open a page
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Browser settings* → *Encoding*
- 3 Select an option and press  (Save)

Information Window Menu

In Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, selectable menu items vary.

Item	Description
Forward	Move to the next information window ( P.22-7).
Bookmarks	Add or open bookmarks ( P.23-9).
Saved pages	Save information windows to Saved pages. Display information window from Saved pages ( P.23-8).
Copy text	Copy text in information window ( P.23-13).
Reload	Reload the information for a page ( P.23-14).
Enter URL	Enter a URL to open another site/page ( P.22-4).
Rendering	Change the displaying method for pages ( P.23-13).
Small screen/ PC screen	Switch information window size. ( P.22-4)
Save	Save images and sounds to Data Folder ( P.23-2, 23-4).

Item	Description
Manage Content	-
Search text	Search text in information window (☞P.23-13).
Zoom In/Out	Zoom in/out browser screen.
Jump to top	Move to the top of the currently viewed page.
Jump to bottom	Move to the bottom of the currently viewed page.
Send URL	Send URLs of a page in a message (☞P.23-14).
Page details	View page details (☞P.23-14).
Switch to Yahoo! Keitai/Switch to PC site browser	Switch browser modes.
History	Access previously viewed pages (☞P.23-12).
Yahoo! Keitai	Display Yahoo! main menu (☞P.23-15).
Go to homepage	Display PC Site Browser homepage.

Item	Description	
Browser settings	Adjust Web Browser settings.	
Text size	Adjust information window text size (☞P.24-3).	
Scroll unit	Change scroll mode (☞P.24-3).	
Downloads	Set image/sound download settings (☞P.24-2).	
Encoding	Change current page character encoding (☞P.23-15).	
Memory management	Empty cache	Delete all information in cache.
	Empty cookies	Delete all cookies.
	Delete authentication information	Delete authentication information.

Item		Description	
Security settings	Manufacture number	Show or hide handset serial number.	
	Send referer	Forward or do not forward referer information (➡P.24-4).	
	Cookie options	Activate or cancel cookies.	
	Java script	Turn Java Script on/off (➡P.24-3).	
	Certificates	View certificate (➡P.23-14, 24-5).	
	Authentication information	Select retention period for authentication information(➡P.24-5).	
Browser initialization	Initialize browser settings or information in Saved Pages.		
Settings reset	Reset settings.		
About browser	View browser details.		

Other Web Settings

Preferences	24-2
Security	24-2
Cookie Options.....	24-2
Turning Java Script On/Off.....	24-3
Text Size	24-3
Scroll Unit.....	24-3
Manufacture Number.....	24-4
Send Referer.....	24-4
Browser Information	24-5
Root Certificate	24-5
Authentication Information	24-5
Refresh Browser	24-6
Empty Cache/Empty Cookies	24-6
Browser Initialization	24-6
Settings Reset.....	24-6

Preferences

- Default Setting**
- Display images: Checked
 - Play sound: Checked

Set 8055C to disable embedded images/sounds when opening pages. Pages download more quickly without image and sound data.

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Downloads*

2 Set items

To disable images

- ① Select *Display images*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

To disable sounds

- ① Select *Play sound*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

Security

Cookie Options

- Default Setting** ■ Accept all

Allow or reject small data files created by Web servers and saved on handset. Cookies contain user information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.

1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Security settings* → *Cookie options*

2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Tip

- *Cookie options* Items

Accept all: Always accept Cookies.

Reject all: Always reject Cookies.

Prompt: Confirm Cookies each time they appear.

Turning Java Script On/Off

- Default Setting**
- Yahoo! Keitai: Confirm when accessing a network
 - PC site browser: On

Select the settings from *On*, *Confirm Each time*, *Confirm when accessing a network* or *Off*.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Security settings* → *Java script*

2 Set items

Yahoo! Keitai

- ① Select *Yahoo! Keitai*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

PC Site Browser

- ① Select *PC site browser*
- ② Select an item and press  (Save)

Text Size

- Default Setting** ■ Normal

Change the size of the page fonts.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Text size*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Scroll Unit

- Default Setting** ■ One line

Select the scroll mode from *One line*, *Half screen*, or *Full screen*.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Scroll unit*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Manufacture Number

Default Setting ■ Off

Set 805SC to automatically send handset serial number to Websites upon request for user identification.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Security settings* → *Manufacture number*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Send Referer

Default Setting ■ On

Set whether or not to send referer information. Referer is a link source URL to be sent to Web server when accessing websites.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Security settings* → *Send referer*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Note

- When Off is set, websites may not be displayed.

Browser Information

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *About browser*

Root Certificate

View electronic certificate saved on 805SC.

- 1 Open a page using SSL/TLS
- 2 Select *Menu* → *Browser settings* → *Security settings* → *Certificates*
- 3 Select *Root certificate* to view the certificate

Authentication Information

Default Setting On

Select the retention period for the entered user ID or Password from *On*, *Per browsing* or *Off*.

- 1 Press  and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Security settings* → *Authentication information*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Save)

Refresh Browser

Empty Cache/Empty Cookies

Delete information saved in Cache and Cookies or authentication information.

1 Press and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings* → *Memory management*

2 Delete as required

To delete Cache contents

Select *Empty cache* → (Yes)

To delete Cookies

Select *Empty cookies* → (Yes)

To delete authentication information

Select *Delete authentication information* → (Yes)

Browser Initialization

1 Press and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings*

2 Select *Browser initialization*

3 Select *Yes*

Settings Reset

1 Press and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Common settings*

2 Select *Settings reset*

3 Select *Yes*

S! Appli

Getting Started	25-2	Near Chat (Japanese)	25-8
S! Appli.....	25-2	About Near Chat.....	25-8
Network S! Appli.....	25-2	Using Near Chat.....	25-8
Downloading S! Appli	25-2	G-GUIDE Mobile (Japanese)	25-10
Starting S! Appli	25-3	Activating G-GUIDE Mobile	25-10
Exit, Pause, & Resume	25-3	Security	25-10
Exiting or Pausing S! Appli.....	25-3	S! Appli Settings	25-12
Restarting a Paused S! Appli	25-3	Application Volume	25-12
Managing S! Appli	25-4	Backlight.....	25-12
Details.....	25-4	Vibration	25-13
Lock/Unlock.....	25-4	S! Appli List Sort	25-13
Delete	25-5	Reset S! Appli Settings	25-13
BookSurfing® (Japanese)	25-6	Java Root Certificate.....	25-13
Browsing Electronic Comics	25-6		
S! Town (Japanese)	25-6		
Using S! Town	25-7		
Using S! Town Library	25-7		

Getting Started

S! Appli

Download 805SC-compatible S! Appli including games, 3D images, and information via Mobile Internet sites.

- Use only compatible S! Appli.
- To download S! Appli, separate subscription is required and communication fees apply.

Network S! Appli

Some S! Appli require network connection. Enjoy network gaming or access real-time information like stock prices.

- A separate subscription is required to download S! Appli or use those which require network connection.
- Connection fees apply.

Downloading S! Appli

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*

2 Select *Download S! Appli*

3 Select **S! Appli to download**

4 Select *Yes*

When details appear

Press  (Download)

5 Select *Exit*

To activate S! Appli

Select *Launch*

Starting S! Appli

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*
- 2 Select S! Appli

Tip

- When S! Appli is active  appears.

Exit, Pause, & Resume

Exiting or Pausing S! Appli

- 1 While an S! Appli is active, press 
- 2 Choose to exit/pause

To exit S! Appli

Press  (Exit)

To pause S! Appli

Press  (Pause)

Tip

- When S! Appli is paused 8055C returns to Standby and  appears.

Restarting a Paused S! Appli

- 1 In Standby with S! Appli paused, press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli*
- 2 Press  (Resume)

Managing S! Appli

Details

Open *Details* to confirm S! Appli properties.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*
- 2 Highlight an S! Appli, select *Menu* → *Details*

Tip

- **S! Appli properties**

Open *Details* to see following properties:
Name, Description, Profiles, Certification, Size, Record Size,
Version, and Vendor.

Lock/Unlock

Lock S! Appli to prevent accidental deletion.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, select *Menu* → *Lock*

Tip

- **Locked S! Appli Indicator**

In S! Appli list,  appears.

- **To cancel lock**

In Step 2, highlight locked S! Appli, select *Menu* → *Unlock*

Delete

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*

2 Delete S! Appli

To delete one S! Appli

Menu → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple S! Appli

① *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

② Check S! Appli to delete

③ Repeat Step ② to check all target S! Appli

④ Press  (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all S! Appli

① *Menu* → *Delete* → *All*

② Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

③ Select *Yes* to delete all S! Appli or *No* to exclude locked ones

Tip

- **When all S! Appli are checked**

In Step 2, perform steps ① to ③ in "To delete multiple S! Appli," press  (Delete) in ④ and proceed the following procedures

① Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

② Select *Yes* to delete all S! Appli or *No* to exclude locked ones

- **To select/deselect multiple S! Appli at once**

① In Step 2, select *Menu* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

② Press  (Mark all/Unmark all)

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

"ブックサーフィン" is the file viewer for browsing electronic comic/photo book files (CCF files) saved in *Book* folder in Data Folder. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll page, browse images with sound/vibration effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. No Content Key is required to browse the default sample files in 8055C.

Browsing Electronic Comics

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library* → *ブックサーフィン*

Tip

- **After starting**
Refer to ヘルプ in *ブックサーフィン*.
- **After changing phone models**
Move CCF files to Memory Card; download Content Key again to browse files on new handset. Note that, some contents require downloading CCF files again.

S! Town (Japanese)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar and perform operations. In 3D virtual town, you can enjoy various events and communicate with other users.

- To use this function, S! Town S! Appli is required. This application is pre-installed in 8055C.
- The pre-installed S! Town S! Appli cannot be deleted.
- Packet transmission fees apply; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Using S! Town

- When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete user registration (free) and profile registration.
- For details on how to use S! Town, see the help menu in S! Town S! Appli.

1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Town*

Tip

- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, see the help menu in S! Town S! Appli.
- An upgrade notice may appear when activating S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

Using S! Town Library

Save S! Town-compatible S! Applis to S! Town Library.

- Activate S! Appli from S! Town Library. S! Town may be activated for some applications.
- By default, any S! Appli is not saved in S! Town Library.

1 Press  and select *Entertainment*

2 Highlight *S! Town* and press  (Library)

Tip

- When S! Town-compatible S! Applis are downloaded
The applications are automatically saved to S! Town Library.

Near Chat (Japanese)

- This application employs a function enabling supervising adults to restrict usage by children under 18 years old.
- When resetting S! Appli settings (➡P.25-13) using Phone Password, the password used for restricting the application is also reset and the restriction is canceled.
- For details on password restriction, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- Users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources, as Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology. You can reject such requests.

About Near Chat

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible-Bluetooth® devices within 10 meters.

- This application employs Bluetooth® technology. Therefore, connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires Near Chat S! Appli. This application is pre-installed in 8055C.

Note

- **Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.**
- **The pre-installed Near Chat S! Appli cannot be deleted.**

Using Near Chat

Setup

Activate these settings before using Near Chat.

- Bluetooth® Activation setting
- Bluetooth® My phone's visibility setting
- S! Appli Request setting

Tip

- **Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® remains active even after exiting Near Chat.**

Note

- Bluetooth® must be active to use Near Chat.
- If Bluetooth® is active and 8055C is visible, you may receive unsolicited connection requests.
- If Bluetooth® is not visible and S! Appli Request is Off, other device requests do not activate Near Chat.

S! Appli Request

Default Setting ■ On

- 1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *S! Appli Request*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off*

Sending Near Chat Request

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *Near Chat*
- 2 Send Near Chat request via S! Appli

Tip

- To exit Near Chat (⊖P.25-3).
- When Bluetooth® Activation is set to Off
In Step 1, select *Yes*

Receiving Near Chat Request

- For details on Near Chat operations, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- 1 When a Near Chat request is received, a notification appears.
 - 2 Select *Yes*

Tip

- To exit Near Chat (☞P.25-3).
- If 30 seconds of no operation, after notification appears, information window appears.

G-GUIDE Mobile (Japanese)

"Gガイドモバイル" is a convenient application that combines program guides for the terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting, and AV remote control function. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anywhere.

Activating G-GUIDE Mobile

- 1 Press  and select *TV* → *Program guide*

Tip

- When activating Program Guide for the first time Initial setting window for "Gガイドモバイル" appears. Make initial setting to display Program Guide.

Activating TV

- 1 In G-Guide Mobile window, highlight a program and press  (TV起動)

Security

Default Setting

- Net Access: Confirm at Initial Request
- Application Autoinvocation: Confirm at Initial Request
- Local connectivity: Confirm at Initial Request
- Multimedia recording: Confirm at Initial Request
- Read User data Access: Confirm Every Time
- Write User data Access: Confirm Every Time
- Bluetooth connectivity: Confirm at Initial Request

Set access/confirmation condition for S! Appli.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library*
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, select *Menu* → *Permissions*

3 Set items

Mobile Internet access

Select *Net Access*

Automatic activation

Select *Application Autoinvocation*

External device connection

Select *Local connectivity*

Multimedia recording

Select *Multimedia recording*

Read user data access

Select *Read User data Access*

Write user data access

Select *Write User data Access*

Bluetooth® connection

Select *Bluetooth connectivity*

4 Select items and press (Save)

Tip

- **Permissions Items**

Setting for each item are as follows. Settings vary by item.

Always allow: Always allow the use of the function.

Confirm at Initial Request

: After activating, S! Appli asks, for the first use, whether to allow the use of the function. Display this message only once.

Confirm Every Time

: Every time you use a function, display a message for confirmation.

Not allow : Never allow the use of the function.

- **To restore defaults**

In Step 3, select *Reset* → *Yes*

S! Appli Settings

Make S! Appli settings and restore defaults.

Application Volume

Default Setting ■ Level 3

Adjust the volume of sounds.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *Application Volume*
- 2 Use  to adjust volume and press 

Tip

- **Sound volume in Manner Profile**
Manner Profile Phone sounds settings apply.

Backlight

Default Setting ■ Normal settings

Set Display settings for the backlight.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *Backlight*
- 2 Select the setting and press 

Tip

- **Backlight Items**
 - Always On* : Set the backlight always on.
 - Always Off* : Set the backlight always off.
 - Normal Settings*: Settings of *Backlight time* (☞P.9-7) for *Display settings* take priority.

Vibration

Default Setting ■ On

Activate to use vibration with compatible S! Appli.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *Vibration*
- 2 Select an item and press 

S! Appli List Sort

Default Setting ■ By Date

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *S! Appli list sort*
- 2 Select an item and press 

Reset S! Appli Settings

Restore S! Appli settings to defaults.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *Reset S! Appli settings*
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press  (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Java Root Certificate

View details of Java Root Certificate.

- 1 Press  and select *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings* → *Java Root certificate*
- 2 Select an item and press  (Select)

Appendix

Function List	26-2
Troubleshooting	26-4
Software Update	26-10
Symbols & Pictograms	26-12
Symbols	26-12
Pictograms	26-13
Memory List	26-14
Specifications	26-14
INDEX	26-16
Warranty & Service	26-23
Customer Service	26-24

Function List

26

Appendix

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
TV	Watch TV	P.7-7
	Program guide	P.7-8
	TV links	P.7-10
	Settings	P.7-13
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.22-3
	Bookmarks	P.23-9
	Saved pages	P.23-8
	Enter URL	P.22-4
	History	P.23-12
	PC site browser	P.22-4
	Common settings	P.24-2
Entertainment	S! Appli	P.25-2, 25-12
	Media Player	P.11-2
	S! Town	P.25-6
	Near Chat	P.25-8

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Camera	Take photo	P.8-4
	Record video	P.8-11
	Go to photos	P.8-5
	Go to videos	P.8-12
	Dynamic effect list	P.8-20
	Video editor	P.8-18
	Slide show	P.9-2
Data Folder	Pictures	P.12-2
	Videos	P.12-2
	Sounds & Ringtones	P.12-2
	S! Appli	P.12-2
	Book	P.12-2
	Other documents	P.12-2
	Memory status	P.12-3

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Messaging	Received msgs	P.18-4, 19-2
	Create msg	P.18-8
	Drafts	P.19-8
	Unsent msgs	P.19-9
	Sent msgs	P.19-8
	Templates	P.18-14
	Server mail box	P.20-2
	Settings	P.21-2, 21-5
	Memory status	P.19-2
	Tools	Alarms
Calendar		P.15-5
Voice recorder		P.15-14
World clock		P.15-18
Calculator		P.15-19
Converter		P.15-19
Stopwatch		P.15-21
Dictionary		P.15-22
Phonebook	Phonebook list	P.5-10

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Settings	Phone settings	-
	Sound settings	P.10-3
	Display settings	P.9-1
	Call settings	-
	Phonebook settings	P.5-1
	Connectivity	P.13-1
	Security	P.14-1
	Software update	P.26-10
	Memory settings	P.14-11, 16-9, 16-9

Troubleshooting

805SC does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
➔ Replace or charge battery.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 805SC?
➔ Install battery correctly.

When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is *PIN lock* set to *Enable*?
➔ If *PIN lock* is *Enable*, enter PIN.

When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *Enable*?
➔ If *USIM lock* is *Enable*, enter USIM password.

Please insert USIM card or This card cannot be recognized appears when 805SC is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
➔ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
➔ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
➔ Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.

Reading USIM Cannot operate or Reading USIM Card Cannot start appears

- ➔ USIM Card data is being read. Try again later.

■ A Busy tone continues after dialing

- ✓ Have you entered a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code?
 - ➔ Enter a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code.
- ✓ Is 805SC set to *Offline mode*? ( appears)
 - ➔ Change 805SC to another mode such as *Normal*.

■ 圏外 or Out appears and no calls can be initiated

- ✓ 805SC is out-of-range.
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

■ Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ✓ Does 圏外 or Out appear?
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

- ✓ Is battery empty?
 - ➔ Replace or charge battery.

■ Unable to initiate a call

- ✓ Is Call Barring set?
 - ➔ Deactivate Call Barring.

■ Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ✓ Is Privacy lock set?
 - ➔ Cancel Privacy lock.

■ Clicking noise is heard during a call

- ✓ Noise may be generated when the signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

■ Unable to charge battery

- ✓ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.

- ☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 805SC?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.
- ☑ Are 805SC terminals and AC Charger clean?
 - ➔ Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
 - ➔ Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
 - ➔ Install a new battery.
- ☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
 - ➔ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

- ☑ Does 805SC or battery become very warm during charging?
 - ➔ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 805SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

■ **Devices become hot**

- ☑ During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- ☑ 805SC may heat up during charging/long calls.
 - ➔ If 805SC can be touched with your hand, it is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24).

■ Battery drains quickly

- ✓ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
- ➔ Use 805SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (➔P.1-11).

■ Unable to watch TV

- ✓ Is USIM Card removed?
- ➔ If USIM Card is not inserted, TV is disabled. Insert USIM Card.
- ✓ Is subscription terminated?
- ➔ TV is enabled only during subscription period.

■ Display flickers

- ✓ Is 805SC used near a fluorescent light?
- ➔ Use 805SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

■ Display is dim or unlit

- ✓ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

■ Unable to play music through speaker

- ✓ Is Manner Profile set?
- ➔ Cancel Manner Profile.
- ✓ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
- ➔ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 805SC.

■ *Too many applications are already running, thus unable to launch anymore* appears

- ✓ Memory is low or full.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary S! Mail messages. If multiple functions are active, close some.

■ Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
 - ➔ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with the supplied USB cable, installing the driver is required. Install the driver from the supplied CD-ROM.
- ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
 - ➔ Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- ☑ Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung PC Studio the same?
 - ➔ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

■ Some Phonebook entries do not appear

- ☑ Is 805SC set to *Hide* in Secret Mode?
 - ➔ Set to *Show* in Secret Mode.

■ Message cannot be created

- ☑ Shared Memory may be full.
 - ➔ Delete messages. If less than 464 KB remains, messages cannot be created.
- ☑ S! Mail mailboxes may be full.
 - ➔ Delete S! mail messages.

■ Try again appears

- ☑ Signal conditions are poor.
 - ➔ Move for a stronger signal and try again.

■ Sending message failed or Unknown error appears

- ☑ Network connection failed.
 - ➔ Try again later.

■ ***All available connections are busy appears***

- ☑ New S! Mail arrives while 805SC is being used for packet data communications.
- ➔ End the data communication and try again.

■ ***Service unavailable appears***

- ☑ 805SC is outside the service area.
- ➔ Send from within the service area.

■ ***No response appears***

- ☑ Network/Server is busy.
- ➔ Try again later.

■ ***Change from flight profile to other profile for network service, created message will be saved in outbox appears***

- ☑ *Offline mode* is active.
- ➔ Cancel *Offline mode* and try again.

■ ***Cannot download because of too large data appears***

- ☑ S! Appli memory is full.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary S! Appli and try again.

■ ***Received invalid data. Quit download or Cannot download because of too large data appears***

- ➔ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

Software Update

Check for 805SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.

1 Press  and select *Settings* → *Software update*

2 Press  (Yes)

805SC connects to network.

3 Read Terms of Use and select *Agree*

Read through Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.

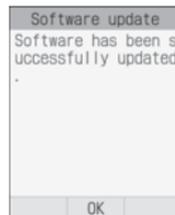
4 Enter Center Access Code (ⓅP.1-23) and press 

Update Result appears.

5 Press 

To update immediately

Select *Update now* to start the update. When completed, 805SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.



Notification Window

To schedule later update

① Select *Schedule update*

② Press  (Yes)

③ Select schedule date and press  (Select)

④ Select schedule time and press  (Select)

⑤ Confirm schedule date & time and press 

Tip

• Procedures

Find details on SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

• Connection fees

No fees are applied to update checks or downloads.

• Scheduled update time

Notification appears. Press  or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while 805SC is in use. When operation ends, a confirmation window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



Notification Window

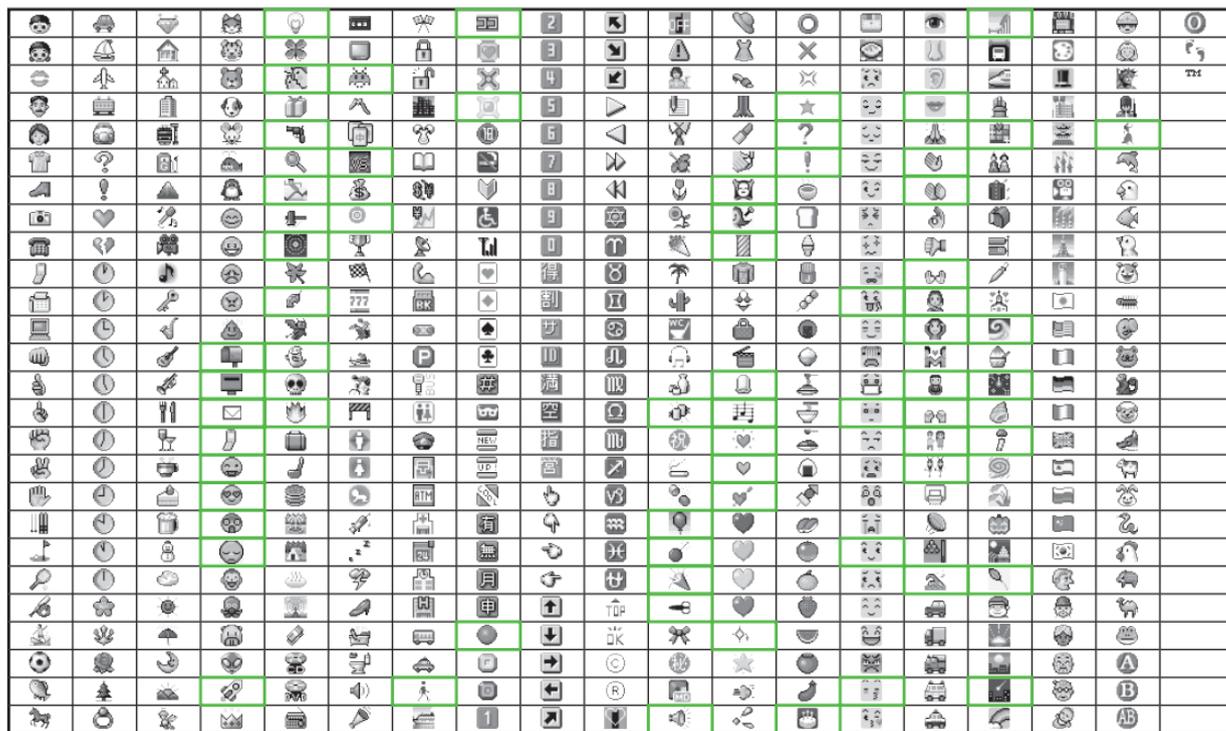
• To cancel *Schedule update*

- ① Perform Steps 1 to 5, select *Cancel schedule*
- ② Press  (Yes)

Note

- Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.
- If Scheduled update time arrives while 805SC is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.
- Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.
- 805SC Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.
- 805SC transmissions are disabled during update.
- Update may take some time to complete.
- Update failure may disable 805SC. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Pictograms



- Pictograms with are animated.
- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory List

26

Appendix

Shared Memory		
S! Mail	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages
SMS	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files and subfolders) per folder
	Videos	
	Sounds & Ringtones	
	S! Appli	
	Book	
	Other documents	

Specifications

805SC specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 805SC

Item	Specification
Weight	101 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 170 minutes* Video Call: 100 minutes*
Continuous Standby Time (805SC closed)	205 hours*
Dimensions (W x H x D)	51.4 x 100.6 x 13.5 mm* (805SC closed)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

*Approximate Value

- 805SC with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 805SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.

- Frequent 805SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Using S! Appli may reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 805SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	900 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	44.3 x 36.8 x 5.6 mm* (without protruding parts)

AC Charger

Item	Specification
Power Source	AC 100 V-240 V, 50/60 Hz
Output Voltage/ Current	DC 5 V/720 mA
Charging Temperature	5 to 40 °C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	53 x 49 x 20 mm* (without cables)
Cord Length	180 cm

*Approximate Value

INDEX

A

AC Charger	1-14
Activate Secret mode	14-6
Activating Bluetooth®	13-3
Activating S! Appli	25-3
Active Slide	16-5
Add to playlist	11-5
Adding Reject Black List	14-10
Adjusting earpiece volume	2-7
Adjusting ringtone volume	2-3, 6-3
Adjusting volume level to play	11-9, 11-15
Alarms	15-2
All music	11-3
Answer Machine	2-5
Answering mode	13-9
Antenna	7-4
Anykey answer	16-5
Applicable Profiles for Bluetooth®	13-2
Area settings	7-11

Attaching to a message for sending still images	8-22
Attaching to a message for sending videos	8-22, 12-14
Attaching/Inserting a file	18-15
Audio Skin	11-9
Auto power On	15-4
Auto redial	16-2

B

Backlight	9-7, 11-10, 25-12
Battery	1-11, 1-12
Battery Installation	1-12
Bluetooth®	13-2
Bluetooth® Address	13-3
Bluetooth® service	13-3
Browser Information	24-5

C

Cache	22-3
Calculator	15-19
Calendar	15-5
Calendar window format	15-6

Call answer mode	10-3
Call cost limit	2-13
Call Log Records	2-9
Call Transfer service	17-2
Call Waiting	17-7
Caller ID	17-12
Camera	8-2
Camera mode	8-4
Camera setting	8-13
Capturing continuous images	8-8
Capturing in Mosaic shot	8-8
Capturing mode	8-4
Capturing still images	8-4
Capturing videos	8-11
Category	5-8
Centre access code	1-23
Certificates	23-17
Changing a file name	12-16
Changing a folder name	12-16, 19-15
Changing mail address	21-2
Changing phone password	14-2
Changing PIN	14-2
Changing PIN2	14-2

E

Earphone call	16-3
Editing bookmarks	23-10
Editing Calendar details	15-12
Editing Phonebook	5-15
Editing still images	8-16
Editing Style	18-13
Editing the title for a Saved page	23-8
Editing Videos	8-18
Effect sound and keypad tone volume	10-2
Effect sound setting	10-2, 10-6
Effects	8-12
Encode	23-15
Entering a number to select an item ...	1-20
Entering by quoting text	4-9
Entering characters	4-2, 4-4
Entering emoticons	4-8
Entering pictograms	4-8
Entering symbols	4-8
Entering URL	22-4
Entry mode for characters	4-2

26-18

Event list	15-11, 15-12
External Device Port	1-8

F

File details	12-15
File Viewer	12-6
Font size	4-13, 9-8, 24-3
Formatting Memory Card	12-23
Forwarding	19-8
Forwarding Messages	20-3
Forwarding Server Mail	20-3
Frames	8-5, 8-17

G

G-GUIDE Mobile	25-10
----------------------	-------

H

Holiday	15-8
Home zone	1-19

I

Image display	24-2
---------------------	------

In-car charger	1-16
Indicators (Attached File)	18-16
Indicators (Draft)	19-4
Indicators (File)	12-2, 12-3
Indicators (My Device)	13-5
Indicators (Received Message)	19-4
Indicators (Sent Message)	19-5
Indicators (Unsent Message)	19-5
Initiating a Call	2-2
Initiating a Video Call	6-2
International code	16-2
Invoking a function with Switch Bar ...	1-21
Invoking functions from Main menu ...	1-19
Items to save to Phonebook	5-2

J

Java Script	24-3
Jump	4-12

K

Key assignments	4-3
Keypad Lock	16-7
Keypad tone	10-3

L

Language	9-8
Locking/unlocking	12-15
Locking/unlocking files	12-15
Locking/Unlocking sound files	15-16
Locking/Unlocking S! Appli	25-4

M

Mail art function	18-7
Mail Server	20-2
Mailbox	19-2
Main menu style	9-5
Manner profile	3-2
Mark default number	5-15
Mass storage	13-13
Maximum of message size	21-3
Media Player	11-2
Memo	15-9
Memory Card Details	12-23
Menu	1-22
Message	18-2
Message details	19-3

Message List	20-2
Message list view	21-7
Message notice view	21-7
Message type icon	19-3
Missed Call	2-4, 2-9
Mobile Postcard	8-6
Mobile tracker	14-7
Modifying characters	4-11
Move to USIM	19-22
mPostcard	8-6
Multi Selector	xi
Mute	2-3, 2-8, 10-3
My devices	13-4, 13-8, 13-9
My phone's name	13-11
My phone's visibility	13-10
My phone's visibility for Bluetooth®	13-10

N

Near Chat	25-8
Network password	1-23, 17-12
Network S! Appli	25-2

O

Offline Profile	3-2
Opening Saved page	23-8
Operating messages in server	20-2
Operations available during a Video Call	6-4
Operations during a call	2-8
Outgoing/incoming call barring service	17-10
Owner information	5-18

P

Page Details	23-14
Page Window	22-6
Panorama shot	8-9
Password Lock	14-5
Pasting characters	4-11
PC Site Browser	22-4
Phone lock	14-5
Phonebook search	5-10
Photo Browser	12-5
PIN	1-5

PIN authentication at power on	1-5, 14-3
PIN lock	14-3
PIN2	1-5
PIN2 lock unlocking code	14-3
Player settings	11-8, 11-14
Playing melody	11-3
Playing video	8-16, 11-11
Playing voice	15-15
Popup menu	9-5
Power ON/OFF	1-17
Prediction entry function	4-13
Pre-installed	12-2
Print via Bluetooth®	13-7
Privacy Lock	14-6
Program Guide	7-8
Providing Manufacturer Number	24-4
PUK Code	1-5, 14-3
Putting a call on hold	2-7

Q

Quoting for entries	4-9
---------------------------	-----

R

Received call log	2-9
Received messages	19-2
Receiving a call	2-3
Receiving a Video Call	6-3
Receiving all messages	20-2
Receiving data via Bluetooth®	13-6
Receiving message in server	20-2
Receiving settings	21-3
Record settings	15-16
Recording voice	15-15
Registering an S! Mail Template	19-20
Registering as S! Mail Template	19-6
Registering SMS templates	4-16
Registering to bookmark	23-9
Registering to Phonebook	5-4
Reject payphone	14-9
Reject unavailable	14-9
Reject unknown	14-9
Reject withheld	14-8
Rejecting call reception	16-6
Rejecting incoming calls	14-8

Renaming Memory Card	12-23
Renaming My devices	13-4
Renaming sound files	15-16
Repeat mode	11-8, 11-14
Reply	18-6, 19-7
Reply with text	21-7
Reset all	14-12
Reset settings	14-11
Resetting a call cost	2-12
Resetting Call times	2-12
Resetting PIN lock	14-3
Resetting S! Appli settings	25-13
Restarting paused S! Appli	25-3
Retry function	18-2
Retry with	6-7
Ringer Reducer	16-5
Ringtone for a Voice Call	5-9

S

Saving a page	23-8
Saving as a template	18-21
Saving attached files	19-14
Saving images	23-2

Saving sounds	23-5	Shortcut operations	8-10	SVG-T/Flash® Viewer	12-9
Saving to Drafts	18-20	Shortcuts	1-21, 16-8	Switching callers	17-9
Schedule	15-7	Side Key	16-6	Switching cameras	8-5, 8-12
Search text	23-13	Simple Search Setting	16-7	S! Appli	25-2
Search type	5-13	Skin	11-10	S! Appli detailed information	25-4
Secure mode for data transfer	13-11	Slide show	9-2, 12-5	S! Mail	18-2
Security	25-10	SMS	18-2, 21-5	S! Mail templates	18-14
Security Codes	1-22	SMS templates	4-10	S! Town	25-6
Security ON/OFF	19-15	Softkey	xi		
Sending a bookmark URL	23-10	Software Update	26-10		
Sending a message from Drafts	19-8	Sort	12-10, 15-12, 19-18		
Sending data via Bluetooth®	13-5	Sorting files	12-10	T	
Sending from Unsent Messages	19-9	Sound file details	15-16	Task	15-10
Sending settings	18-11, 21-2, 21-5	Sound file setting	15-16	Templates	4-10, 19-2
Sending sound files	15-16	Sound playback	24-2	Timer	8-12
Sending still images via Bluetooth®	13-5	Sound Settings	10-3	TV Links	7-10
Sending URL	23-14	Speaker Phone call	2-7	TV settings	7-13
Sending videos via Bluetooth®	13-5	Speed dialing	5-13		
Sending your image	6-6	SSL/TLS	22-2		
Sent messages	19-2	Stopping or Pausing S! Appli	25-3	U	
Server Certification	23-14	Stopwatch	15-21	Unsent messages	19-2
Server Mail Size	20-2	Streaming	23-8	Updating information	23-14
Set default memory	16-9	Substitute images	6-6	Updating mail list	20-2
				USB connection	13-11
				User dictionary	4-14
				USIM Card	1-2

USIM Card Installation	1-3
USIM lock	14-4
USIM password	14-5
Using a file	12-11
Using a template	18-14
Using Memory Card	12-20
Using SMS templates	4-16

V

Various settings for Video Call	6-6
vFile	12-13
Vibration	15-2, 25-13
Vibrator/Sound settings	10-2
Video Mode	8-11
Video settings	8-15
Viewfinder	8-2
Viewing a file	12-3
Viewing attached files	19-13
Viewing attachments	19-13
Viewing Call cost	2-12
Viewing Call Log Records	2-9
Viewing Call times	2-12
Viewing Saved Calendar Entries	15-11

26-22

Viewing your phone number (My Phonebook details)	5-18
Visualization	11-9
Voice Mail Service	17-4
Voice Recorder	15-14
Volume	2-7, 10-2, 25-12

W

Wake-up Alarm	15-2
Wallpaper	9-2
Web	22-2
Web access from a bookmark	23-10
Web connection from access logs	23-12
World clock	15-18

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	23-16
---------------------	-------

Numerics

3D Pictogram	21-6
--------------------	------

Warranty & Service

Warranty

The purchased 805SC comes with a Warranty.

- Check the shop and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting 805SC for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" section for a solution.

If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (☎P.26-24) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- **805SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 805SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.**
- **Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.**

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for Customer Assistance, toll free

SoftBank International Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113 (Toll-free)
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113 (Toll-free)
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113 (Toll-free)
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113 (Toll-free)

SoftBank 805SC User Guide



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.

To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.

May 2007 Version 1

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model Name: SoftBank 805SC

**Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics
Co., Ltd.**
